

ENGLISH FOR IRAQ

2026
نسخة

5th Preparatory

كل مايتعلق بمادة اللغة الانكليزية

للفف الخامس الإعدادي

قواعد | مفردات | قطع الكتاب
حل اسئلة الكتاب والنشاط



Let's learn English



Telegram : alieng93



علي يحيى مدرس انكليزي



علي يحيى مدرس انكليزي



insta : alieng93

إعداد الاستاذ : علي يحيى قاسم
مدرس اللغة الانكليزية

العنوان: نينوى | الموصل



هذه الملزمة من اعداد وتصميم الاستاذ علي يحيى ، وهي مجانية بصيغة PDF ومتوفرة على قناة الاستاذ على التلكرام (علي يحيى مدرس انكليزي) ، يحق للطالب تحميلها وطباعتها بأي مكان يرغبون.

يحق للطالب فقط طباعتها والافضل ان تطبع ملونة حتى لاتضيع الملاحظات المدونة بلون معين. لا يحق للطالب تعديل اي من محتوى الملزمة.

يحق للتدريسيين الاستفادة من الملزمة (للتدريس فقط) شرط عدم تعديل اي محتوى فيها او نسبها لهم.

صممت الملزمة بطريقة تشبه المنهج الدراسي للطالب من حيث الترتيب ، وتحتوي على ترجمة كلمات كثيرة وحلول لتمرين كتاب الطالب وكتاب النشاط وامثلة شاملة للمواضيع.

كما تشمل جميع انشاءات المنهج وحلول وترجمة اسئلة قطع الكتاب والادب.

تساعد الملزمة الطالب على فهم المادة بشكل اساسي وحفظ التعاريف والمفردات بطريقة سهلة وتساعدك وتسهل عليك مادة اللغة الانكليزية حتى تحصل على درجة عالية.

فهرست (يساعدك للوصول الى المواضيع بسرعة)

الموضوع	رقم الصفحة
المواضيع القواعدية	
الوحدة الاولى	
present simple المضارع البسيط	1
present continuous المضارع المستمر	3
present perfect simple المضارع التام البسيط	9
past simple الماضي البسيط	13
question tags الاسئلة الذيلية	17
present perfect continuous المضارع التام المستمر	18
Adjectives & prepositions الصفات وحروف الجر	24
الوحدة الثانية	
giving instructions اعطاء التعليمات	30
Zero conditional if الحالة الشرطية الصفرية	31
الربط بين الماضي المستمر والماضي البسيط	34
so and such ادوات التعجب	38
Making deductions الاستنتاجات	45
الوحدة الثالثة	
Adjective order ترتيب الصفات	53
Look / Look like يبدو مثل / يبدو	56
First conditional if الحالة الشرطية الاولى	59
re البادئة	62
Talking about the future التحدث عن المستقبل	64
Offering to help عرض المساعدة	68
Using contractions استخدام المختصرات	72
الوحدة الخامسة	
Modals الافعال الناقصة	86
Expressing necessity التعبير عن الضرورة	90
mustn't , don't have to صيغة	92
Had better من الافضل	94
Second conditional if الحالة الشرطية الثانية	95
طلب واعطاء النصائح والاراء	98
wishes الامنيات	100
Regrets الندم	104
الوحدة السادسة	
اللغة الرسمية والغير رسمية	113
Reported speech الكلام المنقول	115
Comma الفارزة	124
Headlines العناوين	127
الاسماء المعدودة والغير معدودة	129
الوحدة السابعة	
Passive voice المبني للمجهول	136
Prefixes and suffixes البادئات واللواحق	142
Causative verbs (have , get) الافعال السببية	144
Relative clauses عبارات الوصل	146

قطع الكتاب	
الوحدة الاولى	
Souq Al-Shorja سوق الشورجة	7
Babylon International Festival المهرجان البابلي العالمي	21
الوحدة الثانية	
The Internet الانترنت	41
Mobile Phones الهواتف النقالة	51
الوحدة الثالثة	
Almost extinct على وشك الانقراض	55
Making a difference صنع الفارق	58
The Arabian Oryx المها العربي	71
الوحدة الرابعة	
bakkar's adventures مغامرات بكار	77
الوحدة الخامسة	
Dana's story قصة دانا	101
الوحدة السادسة	
Headlines عناوين	126
Satellites الاقمار الصناعية	134
الوحدة السابعة	
Who wants to be a millionaire? من يريد ان يصبح مليونير	151
London's most famous store اشهر متجر في لندن	160
الوحدة الثامنة	
Caught at last تم إمساكها اخيرا	166

الانشاءات	
الوحدة الاولى	
Ramadan in Iraq رمضان في العراق	27
الوحدة الثانية	
The internet الانترنت	44
الوحدة الثالثة	
The Giant Panda الباندا العملاق	57
Life without a mobile phone الحياة بدون الهواتف النقالة	62
Future changes in my town التغييرات المستقبلية في مدينتي	68
كيفية تقليل تلوث السيارات في المدن	70
Ways of saving water كيفية انقاذ المياه	76
الوحدة الرابعة	
Tom and Jerry توم وجيري	79
الوحدة الخامسة	
My own eating habits عاداتي الغذائية	86
A formal email of complaint ايميل رسمي عن شكوى	107
الوحدة السادسة	
Finding Nemo العثور على نيمو	124
Arabian Gulf Cup 25 كأس الخليج الخامس والعشرون	128
Animals escape from zoo حيوانات هربت من حديقة الحيوان	128
الوحدة السابعة	
My Favourite TV Show برنامجي التلفزيوني المفضل	154
رحلة تسوق جرت بصورة خاطئة	161
الوحدة الثامنة	
Describe yourself for an audition صف نفسك لتجربة اداء	166

الادب	
Little women نساء صغيرات	171
The Tempest العاصفة	175

ملاحظات قواعدية مهمة

إضافة (ed) للفعل

1. لتحويل الفعل **المجرد** الى **ماضي بسيط** نضيف (ed) الى نهاية الكلمة.
work → **worked** / talk → **talked**
2. اذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (e) نضيف له (d) فقط.
invite → **invited** / arrive → **arrived**
3. اذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف **صحيح** يقلب الـ (y) الى (i) ونضيف (ed).
study → **studied** / cry → **cried**
4. اذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف **علة** (a/o/u/i/e) فلا يقلب بل يبقى كما هو ونضيف (ed) فقط.
play → **played** / enjoy → **enjoyed** / stay → **stayed**
5. اذا انتهى الفعل ذات **المقطع الواحد** بحرف **صحيح** مسبق بحرف **علة واحد** ، نكرر الحرف الصحيح ونضيف (ed).
stop → **stopped** / trot → **trotted**
6. الافعال المتكونة من **اكثر من مقطع** ومنتهية بحرف **صحيح** مسبق بحرف **علة واحد** عندما **يكون** التشديد على **المقطع الاخير** ، نكرر الحرف الصحيح ونضيف (ed).
prefer → **preferred**
7. الافعال المتكونة من **اكثر من مقطع** ومنتهية بحرف **صحيح** مسبق بحرف **علة واحد** عندما **لا يكون** التشديد على **المقطع الاخير** ، لا نكرر الحرف الصحيح ونضيف (ed) فقط.
open → **opened** / offer → **offered**

إضافة (ing) للفعل

1. نضيف (ing) للافعال لبيان استمراريتها او لتحويلها الى اسم.
help → **helping** / work → **working**
2. اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نحذف حرف (e) من نهاية الكلمة ونضيف (ing).
write → **writing** / take → **taking**
3. اذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (y) فلا يقلب بل يبقى كما هو ونضيف (ing) فقط.
play → **playing** / study → **studying** / fly → **flying**
4. اذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) ، عند الاضافة يقلبان الى الحرف (y) ثم نضيف (ing).
tie → **tying** / lie → **lying** / die → **dying**
5. اذا انتهى الفعل ذات **المقطع الواحد** بحرف **صحيح** مسبق بحرف **علة واحد** ، نكرر الحرف الصحيح ونضيف (ing).
swim → **swimming** / get → **getting** / cut → **cutting** / run → **running**
6. اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **صحيح** مسبق بـ (حرفين علة) ، فإن الحرف الصحيح لا يكرر ونضيف (ing) فقط.
eat → **eating** / read → **reading** / clean → **cleaning**
7. الافعال المتكونة من **اكثر من مقطع** ومنتهية بحرف **صحيح** مسبق بحرف **علة واحد** عندما **يكون** التشديد على **المقطع الاخير** ، نكرر الحرف الصحيح ونضيف (ing).
begin → **beginning** / prefer → **preferring**
8. الافعال المتكونة من **اكثر من مقطع** ومنتهية بحرف **صحيح** مسبق بحرف **علة واحد** عندما **لا يكون** التشديد على **المقطع الاخير** ، لا نكرر الحرف الصحيح ونضيف (ing) فقط.
open → **opening** / offer → **offering**

ملاحظات قواعدية مهمة

إضافة (s) الشخص الثالث للفعل

1. نضيف (s) الشخص الثالث للأفعال في زمن **المضارع البسيط** حصراً عندما يكون الفاعل (he/she/it) أو اسم مفرد.
2. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (o/s/sh/ch/z/x) عندها نضيف (es) للفعل.
go → goes / cross → crosses / wash → washes / teach → teaches / buzz → buzzes / fax → faxes
3. إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (e) نضيف له (s) فقط.
drive → drives / write → writes
4. إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف صحيح ، **يقلب الـ (y) إلى (i)** ونضيف (es).
study → studies / try → tries
5. إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف **علة (a/o/u/i/e)** فلا **يقلب** بل يبقى كما هو ونضيف (s) فقط.
play → plays / stay → stays / buy → buys
6. إذا أردنا إضافة (s) الشخص الثالث للفعل (have) فعندها سيتحول إلى (has) وليس (haves).

إضافة (s) الجمع للاسماء

1. نضيف (s) الجمع للاسماء لتصبح جمع.
2. إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (s/sh/ch/z/x) عندها نضيف (es) للاسم.
glass → glasses / dish → dishes / match → matches / buzz → buzzes / box → boxes
3. إذا كان الاسم ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف صحيح ، **يقلب الـ (y) إلى (i)** ونضيف (es).
city → cities / story → stories / party → parties
4. إذا كان الاسم ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف **علة (a/o/u/i/e)** فلا **يقلب** بل يبقى كما هو ونضيف (s) فقط.
day → days / key → keys
5. أغلب الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ (f/fe) نحولهم إلى (v) ونضيف (es).
knife → knives / shelf → shelves / leaf → leaves / life → lives / thief → thieves
6. إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (o) وقبله حرف **علة** نضيف (s) فقط عند الجمع.
zoo → zoos / radio → radios / video → videos / studio → studios
7. إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (o) وقبله حرف صحيح نضيف (es) عند الجمع.
hero → heroes / tomato → tomatoes / potato → potatoes / echo → echoes
8. هنالك أسماء **شاذة** لا تخضع لقاعدة معينة عند الجمع (**تحفظ نصاً**).
child → children / man → men / woman → women / ox → oxen / mouse → mice
tooth → teeth / foot → feet / goose → geese / person → people

UNIT ONE / الوحدة الاولى

U1: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 6 (Why are you writing to your mother?)

لماذا تكتب لوالدتك

Present simple المضارع البسيط

1. نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الاحداث الحقيقية او الاحداث التي تحصل بشكل متكرر او كأن تكون كل يوم او كل اسبوع او كل شهر وهناك دلالات تأتي مع المضارع البسيط مثل:

(always / often / usually / each / every day / every week / every month / once a week / twice a month)

2. قاعدة المضارع البسيط في حالة الإثبات هي:

التكلمة + الشخص الثالث s + فعل (اسم مفرد / he / she / it)
التكلمة + فعل مجرد + (اسم جمع / I / we / you / they)

Ex1: He **works** in a bank.

Ex2: We **take** the bus to school.

Ex3: Water **freezes** at 0°C.

Ex4: Dates **grow** on palm trees.

Ex5: She (leave) home at 7:00am. (Present simple) حول الى المضارع البسيط

- She **leaves** home at 7:00am.

Ex6: They often (wash) the car every week. (Present simple)

- They often **wash** the car every week.

Ex7: He (go) to school every day. (Present simple)

- He **goes** to school every day.

Ex8: We usually the bus to school. (**take** / taking / takes)

Ex9: She in a bank. (work / **works** / working)

3. قاعدة المضارع البسيط في حالة النفي هي:

التكلمة + فعل مجرد + **doesn't** + (اسم مفرد / he / she / it)
التكلمة + فعل مجرد + **don't** + (اسم جمع / I / we / you / they)

Ex10: Ali usually leaves home at 8 o'clock. (Negative) حول الى نفي

- Ali usually **doesn't leave** home at 8 o'clock.

Ex11: They go to school by bus every day. (Negative)

- They **don't go** to school by bus every day.

Ex12: It (not rain) much in summer. (Correct in the present simple)

- It **doesn't rain** much in summer.

Ex13: They (**don't** / doesn't) go to the cinema every weekend.



4. قاعدة المضارع البسيط في حالة الاستفهام هي:

Does + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + فعل مجرد + ؟
Do + (I / we / you / they / اسم جمع) + فعل مجرد + ؟

Ex14: Salim goes to school every day. (Question) حول الى سؤال

- **Does** Salim **go** to school every day?

Ex15: They wash the car every week. (Question)

- **Do** they **wash** the car every week?

Ex16: What (**do** / does) you cook?

5. ظروف التكرار (**always/usually/often/sometimes/never/every/each/once a week/twice a month**) تأتي مع المضارع البسيط ويكون موقعها عادة بين الفاعل والفعل الرئيسي وقد تأتي في نهاية الجملة. وظرف التكرار (**sometimes**) قد يأتي في بداية الجملة.

Ex17: Nada **usually** gets up early.

Ex18: Do students **always** wear a school uniform?

Ex19: I visit my cousins **once a week**.

Ex20: She travels to London **twice a year**.

Ex21: **Sometimes** you reach the class late.

6. اذا كان الفعل الرئيسي في الجملة هو فعل الكينونة (**be**) فيتحول الى (**is / am / are**) حسب فاعل الجملة وفي المضارع البسيط يأتي بعد افعال (**be**) **أسم** او **صفة** او **حرف جر** ، اما بالنسبة لظروف التكرار يكون موقعها **بعد** الفعل المساعد.

be → **is** (he/she/it)
 be → **are** (they/we/you)
 be → **am** (I)

Ex22: He (be) early. (Present simple)

- He **is** early. **الاثبات**
- He **is not** early. **النفي**
- **Is** he early? **الاستفهام**

Ex23: We (be) late. (Present simple)

- We **are** late. **الاثبات**
- We **are not** late. **النفي**
- **Are** we late? **الاستفهام**

Ex24: I (be) tired. (Present simple)

- I **am** tired. **الاثبات**
- I **am not** tired. **النفي**
- **Am I** tired? **الاستفهام**

Ex25: The capital of Iraq (be) Baghdad. (PS)

- The capital of Iraq **is** Baghdad.

Ex26: I (be) a student in this school. (Present simple)

- I **am** a student in this school.

Ex27: She (be) at home. (Present simple)

- She **is** at home.

Ex28: (be) the books on the table? (Present simple)

- **Are** the books on the table?

Ex29: I am tired. (Insert: usually)

- I am **usually** tired.

Ex30: You are late. (Insert: often)

- You are **often** late.

7. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (**Yes/No**) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

Yes فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل ,
not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **No**

Ex31: Is he a teacher? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, he is.**
- **No, he isn't.**

Ex32: Are they clever? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, they are.**
- **No, they aren't.**

Ex33: Do you like Art? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, I do.**
- **No, I don't.**



المضارع المستمر Present continuous

1. نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحصل وقت التكلم وهناك دلالات على المضارع المستمر وهي (today / at the moment / at the present time / now / Look! / Listen! / Be quiet! / keep quiet!).
2. قاعدة المضارع المستمر في حالة الإثبات هي:

(he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + **is** + فعل + **ing**
 (you / we / they / اسم جمع) + **are** + فعل + **ing**
 (I) + **am** + فعل + **ing**

Ex1: Ssh! My baby brother **is sleeping**.

Ex2: My brother (play) tennis at the moment. (Present continuous) حول الى المضارع المستمر

- My brother **is playing** tennis at the moment.

Ex3: Look! The ducks (cross) the road. (Correct) صحح الجملة

- Look! The ducks **are crossing** the road.

Ex4: Keep quiet! The baby (sleep) now. (Present continuous)

- Keep quiet! The baby **is sleeping** now.

3. قاعدة المضارع المستمر في حالة النفي هي:

(he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + **is** + **not** + فعل + **ing**
 (you / we / they / اسم جمع) + **are** + **not** + فعل + **ing**
 (I) + **am** + **not** + فعل + **ing**

Ex5: My brother is playing tennis at the moment. (Negative) حول الى نفي

- My brother **is not playing** tennis at the moment.

Ex6: They are not (clean / cleaned / **cleaning**) the office now.

Ex7: I Math today. (is not studying / **am not studying** / are not studying)

4. قاعدة المضارع المستمر في حالة الاستفهام هي:

Is + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + فعل + **ing** + ?
Are + (you / we / they / اسم جمع) + فعل + **ing** + ?
Am + (I) + فعل + **ing** + ?

Ex8: They are playing tennis now. (Question) حول الى سؤال

- **Are they** playing tennis now?

Ex9: Nadia is watering the flowers at the moment. (Question)

- **Is Nadia** watering the flowers at the moment?

Ex10: I am studying Math today. (Question)

- **Am I** studying Math today?

Ex11: What (you/do) at the moment. (Question)

- What **are you doing** at the moment?

Ex12: Listen! Who (make) that terrible noise? (Question)

- Listen! Who **is making** that terrible noise?



5. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (Yes/No) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **Yes**
not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **No**

Ex13: Is she making that noise? (Yes / No)

- **Yes, she is.**
- **No, she isn't.**

Ex14: Are they playing tennis right now? (Yes / No)

- **Yes, they are.**
- **No, they aren't.**

6. أمثلة إضافية:

Ex15: I'm (read / **reading** / reads) a book at the moment.

Ex16: At the moment, we (learn) English. (**Correct the verb**) **صحح الفعل**

- At the moment, we **are learning** English.

Ex17: Be quiet! I (try) to do my homework. (**Correct**)

- Be quiet! I **am trying** to do my homework.

Ex18: Ali (eat) his sandwich right now. (**Put the verb in the correct form**) **ضع الفعل في الصيغة الصحيحة**

- Ali **is eating** his sandwich right now.

Ex19: They (not / watch) TV at the moment. (**Correct**)

- They **are not watching** TV at the moment.

Ex20: What (you / do) right now?

- What **are you doing** right now?

Ex21: she What cooking now ? is (**Put in the correct order**) **ضع الجملة في الترتيب الصحيح**

- **What is she cooking now?**

Ex22: Zaid and Mustafa (**are taking** / is taking) some exercise.

Ex23: I'm painting my bedroom (yesterday / every day / **now**)

Ex24: Nadia is watering the flowers at the moment. (**Question**)

- **Is Nadia watering** the flowers at the moment?

7. بعض الافعال **لا تستخدم** مع زمن المضارع المستمر مثل:

(**know / like / love / need / want / mean / come from**)

Ex25: Do you **know** Ali?

Ex26: I don't **like** sad stories.

Ex27: Does she **love** me?

Ex28: I **need** this book.

Ex29: I **want** that bag.

Ex30: What does this word **mean**?

Ex31: Where does Shakira **come from**?



Lesson 1 (AB) P. 4 - 5

C.p4/ Circle the correct option to complete the sentences.

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة لتكمل الجمل التالية

1. Who *she speaks* / *is she speaking* / *does she speak* to on her mobile? She is getting very angry!
2. Do you use / Does she use / *Are you using* your English grammar book at the moment, or can I borrow it for ten minutes?
3. We often *seeing* / *are seeing* / *see* Fuad in the park with his brother.
4. Mona *cooks* / *'s cooking* / *does cook* food for the party and can't come out today.
5. I *don't wear* / *not wearing* / *am never wearing* my glasses when I read.
6. My parents *don't travel* / *travel* / *are travelling* around the Middle East at the moment.

D.p5/ Complete the sentences in the present simple or the present continuous using the prompts in brackets.

اكمل الجمل التالية بزمان المضارع البسيط او المضارع المستمر مستخدماً المعطيات الموجودة بين الاقواس

Example. Look at this picture of Ameera. She (wear) a crazy hat!

- Look at this picture of Ameera. She's **wearing** a crazy hat.

1. Please be quiet. I (try) to do my Maths homework.

- Please be quiet. I **am trying** to do my Maths homework.

2. What time (he usually) get home from work?

- What time **does he usually** get home from work?

3. We (not usually go out) in the middle of the day because it's too hot.

- We **don't usually go out** in the middle of the day because it's too hot.

4. Huda can't see the board because she (not wear) her glasses today.

- Huda can't see the board because she **isn't wearing** her glasses today.

5. (children wear) a school uniform in Iraq?

- **Do children wear** a school uniform in Iraq?

6. Waleed and Yousef (study) in England at the moment.

- Waleed and Yousef **are studying** in England at the moment.

HW.p5/ Complete short answers.

اكمل الاجوبة القصيرة

Example. Are you watching a DVD? - Yes, **I am**.1. Are you enjoying your course? - Yes, **I am**.2. Do you know Bilal? - No, **I don't**.3. Are you eating at the moment? - No, we **aren't**.4. Is your mobile ringing? - Yes, **it is**.5. Do you remember me? - Yes, of course **I do**.6. Do they work in Basra? - Yes, **they do**.7. Does this DVD player work? - No, **it doesn't**, I'm afraid.

U1: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 7 (Ramadan in Iraq) رمضان في العراق

Lesson 2 (AB) P. 6 - 7

B.p6/ Complete each sentence with a word from Exercise A.

اكمل كل جملة بكلمة من التمرين A

patient صبور / kind لطيف / generous كريم / fortunate محظوظ / traditional تقليدي / bossy فضولي
 sociable اجتماعي / bad-tempered متفعل / ساء المزاج ، منفعل / grumpy غاضب ، متأفف / easy-going متسامح / calm هادئ

1. My uncle always gives me expensive presents. He is very **generous**2. Rashid loves meeting new people. He is a very person. **sociable**3. Hasan helped the old woman to cross the road. He is a boy. **kind**4. There is a fire in the building. We have to leave immediately. Please be and don't run.
calm5. You are very You have a lovely family and a good job. **fortunate**6. I was singing and Sultan shouted at me and told me to be quiet. Why is he so today?
bad-tempered7. My father is always relaxed and he never gets angry. He is usually very **easy-going**

U1: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 8 – 9 (Souq Al-Shorja) سوق الشورجة

Unit

1

Lesson 3
AB 8–9

Souq Al-Shorja

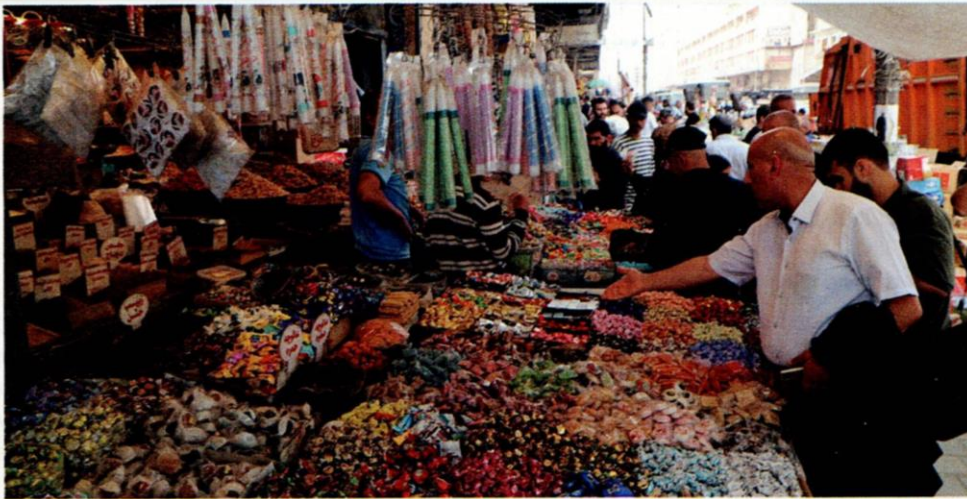
- 1 What can you see in the photos below? What do you know about this place?
- 2 Read the text. What type of text is it?

a blog post

a newspaper article

a social media post

an email



Last week, I visited a very special place in Baghdad for the first time. It is Souq Al-Shorja. My guide on this amazing visit was my Iraqi friend Hassan. We found out that Souq Al-Shorja stands at the heart of Baghdad, Iraq, a place with a rich history that goes way back. As we stepped into the market, we were surrounded by a variety of shops, each offering something unique. The air was filled with the delightful aromas of spices, and the vibrant colours of clothes caught our eye at every turn. While wandering through the market, we noticed a mix of old and new buildings, telling stories of both the past and the present.

The friendly people selling their goods, offered us handmade items and delicious Iraqi snacks to share. While we were walking through the lively crowds, we sensed the energy of daily-life conversations, laughter and the excitement of bargaining. Souq Al-Shorja isn't just a simple market; it's a vivid snapshot of Iraqi life and culture, and a place that everyone should visit.



سوق الشورجة Souq Al-Shorja

قطعة الوحدة الاولى 1

1. The writer has been to Souq Al-Shorja many times. (True / **False**) الكاتب زار سوق الشورجة مرات عديدة
2. The writer visited the market alone. (True / **False**) الكاتب زار السوق بمفرده
3. Souq Al-Shorja is not in central Baghdad. (True / **False**) لا يقع سوق الشورجة في وسط بغداد
4. The market offers a variety of shops. (**True** / False) يضم السوق مجموعة متنوعة من المحلات التجارية
5. The writer enjoys the smells of spices and the beautiful colours of the clothes in the shops. (True / **False**) الكاتب يستمتع برائحة التوابل وألوان الملابس الجميلة في المحلات التجارية
6. Sellers at the market are not friendly. (True / **False**) البائعين في السوق غير ودودين

Lesson 3 (AB) P. 8 - 9

تمرين (A) ص 8. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

B.p8/ Match a word or phrase in the text on page 8 of the Student's Book with the definitions (1-8).

طابق الكلمات من النص الموجود في كتاب الطالب ص 8 مع التعاريف التالية

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. a person who shows a place to other people | guide | مرشد سياحي |
| 2. moving around slowly | wandering | تجول |
| 3. became aware of something | sensed | حساس |
| 4. producing strong emotions | vivid | حي ، مشرق ، واضح |
| 5. typical, pleasant smells (i.e., food) | aromas | عبير ، شذى ، رائحة طيبة |
| 6. something you put in food | spices | بهارات |
| 7. a quick view or impression of something | snapshot | لقطة ، انطباع سريع عن شيء معين |
| 8. negotiating the sale of something | bargaining | مساومة ، يتفاوض على سعر شيء معين |

D.p9/ Put the words in brackets in the correct order to form sentences about the text on page 8 of the Student's Book in the past simple.

ضع الكلمات الموجودة بين الاقواس بالترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملة بزمان الماضي البسيط

1. The air and the vibrant colours of clothes caught our eyes at every turn.
(aromas / was / the / filled / delightful / with / spices / of)
- **was filled with the delightful aromas of spices**
2. While wandering through the market,, telling stories of both the past and the present.
(a / old / noticed / mix / of / new / and / buildings / we)
- **we noticed a mix of old and new buildings**
3. The friendly people selling their goods,
(handmade / us / to / snacks / offered / to / items / and / share / delicious / Iraqi)
- **offered to us handmade items and delicious Iraqi snacks to share**
4. While we were walking through the lively crowds,, laughter and the excitement of bargaining. (energy / the / sensed / we / daily-life / of / conversations)
- **we sensed the energy of daily-life conversations**
5. It ! (really / a / was / experience / interesting)
- **was a really interesting experience**



U1: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 10 (Have you got a problem?) هل حصلت لك مشكلة

المضارع التام البسيط Present perfect simple

1. نستخدم هذا الزمن للتعبير عن احداث بدأت في الماضي ولا زالت مستمرة او انتهت ولا زال تأثيرها موجود وحسب القاعدة التالية:

Affirmative حالة الاثبات
تكملة + (has / have) + p.p + فاعل
Negative حالة النفي
تكملة + (has / have) + not + p.p + فاعل
Question حالة الاستفهام
? + تكملة + p.p + فاعل + (Has / Have)

2. نستخدم (has) اذا كان الفاعل اسم مفرد او الضمانر (he / she / it).

3. نستخدم (have) اذا كان الفاعل اسم جمع او الضمانر (I / we / you / they).

Ex1: He **has broken** his leg. جملة مثبتة

Ex2: He **has not broken** his leg. جملة منفية

Ex3: Has he **broken** his leg? جملة استفهامية

Ex4: They **have gone** to school. جملة مثبتة

Ex5: They **have not gone** to school. جملة منفية

Ex6: **Have they gone** to school? جملة استفهامية

4. المختصرات التالية مهمة:

he has → **he's** / she has → **she's** / it has → **it's**

I have → **I've** / we have → **we've** / you have → **you've** / they have → **they've**

5. مع المضارع التام البسيط لانستخدم عبارات الوقت مثل (yesterday , last month , last week , on Saturday).

6. هنالك ظروف ودلالات من خلالها نعرف ان الجملة في زمن المضارع التام وهي:

• كلمة (ever) وتعني (هل سبق ان) ونستخدمها في (الجملة الاستفهامية) ونضعها قبل التصريف الثالث.

Ex7: Have you (**ever** / never) camped in the forest?

Ex8: (you ever sleep) under the stars in the desert? (Use the present perfect simple)

- **Have you ever slept** under the stars in the desert?

Ex9: (**Have you ever** / Did you ever) spent the whole night awake looking at the stars?

Ex10: You ever (ride) on an elephant? (Put the verb in the correct form)

- **Have you ever ridden** on an elephant?

Ex11: Have you (**ever** / never) seen our website?



• كلمة (never) وتعني (أبداً / لم) وتعتبر أداة نفي ونضعها قبل التصريف الثالث.

Ex12: A scorpion. (never / hold) (Write a true sentence with about you)

- I **have never held** a scorpion.

Ex13: (never / touch a snake). (Make a true sentence about yourself)

- I **have never touched** a snake.

Ex14: I never tried Chinese food. (Correct)

- I **have** never tried Chinese food.

Ex15: Sabah has (ever / **never**) travelled outside of Iraq.

• كلمة (just) وتعني (الآن / تَوّاً / قبل قليل) وتستخدم للتعبير عن وقوع الحدث قبل فترة قصيرة ونضعها قبل التصريف الثالث.

Ex16: I (just / finish) my homework. (Rewrite correctly)

- I **have just finished** my homework.

Ex17: I'm really in a good mood because (**I've just finished** / I've just been finishing) my exams.

Ex18: She's just (buy) these jeans. (Correct)

- She's just **bought** these jeans.

• كلمة (already) وتعني (مُسبِقاً) وتأتي مع الجمل المثبتة والجمل الاستفهامية ونستخدمها للتعبير عن وقوع الحدث بزمان مبكر أكثر من المتوقع ونضعها قبل التصريف الثالث أو في نهاية الجُملة.

Ex19: I have **already** written my report.

Ex20: She has washed the dishes **already**.

Ex21: Have you **already** eaten? OR Have you eaten **already**?

Ex22: They've passed the driving test. (Insert: already)

- They've **already** passed the driving test.

- They've passed the driving test **already**.

Ex23: I bought him a new mobile phone last week and he already lost it. (Correct the sentence)

- I bought him a new mobile phone last week and he **has already** lost it.

• كلمة (yet) وتأتي في نهاية الجملة وتعني (الآن) إذا كانت الجملة استفهامية ونستخدمها للتعبير عن توقع حدوث شيء ، أو تعني (لحد الآن) إذا كانت الجملة منفية ونستخدمها للدلالة على عدم وقوع الحدث لحد لحظة الكلام بحيث تكون (has / have) منفية.

Ex24: Have you finished your work **yet**?

Ex25: I haven't finished my homework **yet**.

Ex26: (you / book) a hotel yet? (Complete with the correct form of the present perfect)

- **Have you booked** a hotel yet?

Ex27: (you / buy) any maps of London or guidebooks yet? (Complete with the correct form)

- **Have you bought** any maps of London or guidebooks yet?

Ex28: I haven't (pack) my suitcase yet. **packed**

Ex29: It (not / stop) raining yet. (Rewrite correctly)

- It **hasn't stopped** raining yet.



- كلمة (since) وتعني (منذ) ونستخدمها لتحديد بداية الفترة الزمنية وحسب الجدول التالي.
- كلمة (for) وتعني (لمدة) ونستخدمها لتحديد طول الفترة الزمنية وحسب الجدول التالي.
- الجدول التالي مهم.

منذ since	لمدة for
1. o'clock ساعة	1. a long time , many years لفترة طويلة
2. yesterday البارحة	2. ages لفترة طويلة
3. since last Sunday ايام الاسبوع	3. ten days , three years , two hours
4. 1990 , 2007 سنين since last April اشهر السنة	4. seconds , minutes , hours , days , weeks , months , years اجزاء الزمن

ملاحظة: اذا وجدنا بعد الفراغ احدى العلامات الثلاثة (اسم جمع / ادوات التنكير a , an , the last) نختار (for) واذا لم نجد اي منها نختار (since).

Ex30: They have been married (since / for) three years.

Ex31: The teacher hasn't known the class (since / for) a long time.

Ex32: He has had that motorbike (since / for) three years.

Ex33: I have had this car (since / for) November.

Ex34: We haven't met (since / for) we were in school.

Ex35: We haven't seen her (since / for) 2001.

Ex36: Have you worked here (since / for) you graduated.

Ex37: I haven't seen a good film (since / for) last January.

Ex38: We have been married (since / for) 2003.

Ex39: My sister (not be) to college for three days because of a cold. (Rewrite the sentence correctly)
- My sister **hasn't been** to college for three days because of a cold.

Ex40: Fadia didn't speak to me since her sister's wedding. (Rewrite the sentence correctly)
- Fadia **hasn't spoken** to me since her sister's wedding.

7. نستخدم المضارع التام البسيط مع الاسئلة التي تبدأ بأدوات السؤال (كم عدد المرات How many times / كم طول المدة How long) مثل:

Ex41: **How long** have you known Jenny?

Ex42: **How many times** has she been to Beirut this year?



8. نستخدم (gone / been) مع المضارع التام البسيط حيث ان كلمة (been) تعني ذهب وعاد اي ان (الفاعل موجود حالياً) اما (gone) تعني ذهب ولم يعد اي ان (الفاعل غير موجود حالياً).

9. نستخدم (gone) في الحالات التالية:

- اذا وجدنا كلمات تعني (سوف يعود) (will be back / will be here) مثل:

Ex43: They have (been / gone) to Dubai. They **will be back** in five days.

Ex44: Nabaa has (gone / been) to the library. She **'ll be here** in an hour.

- اذا وجدنا كلمة (here) في جملة استفهامية مثل:

Ex45: Is Adam **here** or has he (gone / been) to the football practice?

- اذا وجدنا (not at home / not here / away) مثل:

Ex46: My parents aren't at home this evening. They have (gone / go) out.

Ex47: My sister isn't at home at the moment. She has (been / gone) shopping.

Ex48: The Al-Badri family isn't here at the moment. They've (gone / been) on holiday.

Ex49: Kamal is away. He's (been / gone) to Mosul.

10. نستخدم (been) في الحالات التالية:

- اذا وجدنا (haven't / hasn't) فانها تدل على عدم الذهاب الى ذلك المكان (الفاعل موجود حالياً) مثل:

Ex50: I haven't (gone / been) to London.

Ex51: She hasn't (been / gone) to Italy.

Ex52: I (didn't go / haven't been) to China yet, but I would like to one day.

Ex53: I (haven't been / haven't gone) to China yet, but I would like to one day.

- اذا كان معنى الجملة يدل على الذهاب الى ذلك المكان سابقاً ونستدل على ذلك من خلال هذه الكلمات (once / twice) مثل:

Ex54: I want to go to Scotland. I there twice. It's a nice place.

(Complete with the present perfect simple using been or gone).

- I want to go to Scotland. I **have been** there twice. It's a nice place.

- اذا وجدنا (Have you) التي نستخدمها لسؤال شخص فيما اذا سبق له الذهاب الى مكان معين مثل:

Ex55: I'll show you around Baghdad. Have you (been / gone) to the museum?

- اذا وجدنا في الجملة (is here / are here) مثل:

Ex56: My uncle **is here** now. He's (gone / been) to Tokyo.

11. في المضارع التام لانستخدم عبارات مثل (yesterday / last month / last week / on Saturday).

12. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (Yes / No) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **Yes**
 not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **No**

Ex57: Have they eaten the food? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, they have.**
- **No, they haven't.**

Ex58: Has he played tennis? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, he has.**
- **No, he hasn't.**

Ex59: Have you seen my keys? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, I have.**
- **No, I haven't.**

Ex60: Has the cat escaped? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, it has.**
- **No, it hasn't.**



الماضي البسيط Past simple

1. الماضي البسيط هو حدث وقع في زمن الماضي وانتهى.

2. الظروف الدالة على هذا الزمن هي (yesterday / last / ago / 1999).

3. هنالك نوعان من الافعال: (الافعال القياسية / الافعال الغير قياسية).

4. الافعال القياسية (regular verbs) وهي افعال نضيف لها (ed / d).

5. لتحويل الفعل المجرد الى ماضي بسيط نضيف (ed) الى نهاية الكلمة.

Ex1: work → worked / visit → visited

6. اذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (e) نضيف له (d) فقط.

Ex2: invite → invited

7. اذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف صحيح ، يقلب الـ (y) الى (i) ونضيف (ed).

Ex3: study → studied

8. اذا كان الفعل ينتهي بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف علة (a / o / u / I / e) فلا يقلب بل يبقى كما هو ونضيف (ed).

Ex4: play → played / enjoy → enjoyed / stay → stayed

9. هنالك افعال شاذة عن القاعدة وهي الافعال الغير قياسية (irregular verbs) لاتخضع لقاعدة معينة كما في الجدول التالي:

المضارع Present	الماضي past	المضارع present	الماضي past
come	came	make	made
go	went	take	took
get up	got up	read	read
forget	forgot	buy	bought
give	gave	have	had
see	saw	is/am	was
put	put	do	did
sell	sold	are	were

10. قاعدة الماضي البسيط في حالة الاثبات هي:

التكملة + الفعل بالماضي + الفاعل

Ex5: Ali (play) tennis yesterday. (Past simple) حول الى الماضي البسيط

- Ali played tennis yesterday.

Ex6: He (see) the bird on the roof. (Past simple)

- He saw the bird on the roof.

Ex7: Suha (go) to school yesterday. (Past simple)

- Suha went to school yesterday.



11. قاعدة الماضي البسيط في حالة **النفي** هي:

فعل مجرد + **did not** + فاعل

Ex8: Ali played football last week. (Negative) **حول الى نفي**

- Ali **did not play** football last week.

Ex9: Salim forgot the book on the table. (Negative)

- Salim **didn't forget** the book on the table.

Ex10: Suha went to school yesterday. (Negative)

- Suha **did not go** to school yesterday.

12. قاعدة الماضي البسيط في حالة **الاستفهام** هي:

? + فعل مجرد + فاعل + **Did**

Ex11: She visited her friend yesterday. (Question) **حول الى سؤال**

- **Did she visit** her friend yesterday?

Ex12: They bought a car last week. (Question)

- **Did they buy** a car last week?

Ex13: How did you (**hear** / heard) the news?

Ex14: Where (she / go) yesterday?

- Where **did she go** yesterday?

13. اذا كان الفعل الرئيسي هو فعل الكينونة (**be**) فيتحول الى (**was**) او (**were**) حسب **فاعل** الجملة.

• نحول (**be**) الى (**was**) اذا كان فاعل الجملة (**I / he / she / it**) او اسم مفرد.

• نحول (**be**) الى (**were**) اذا كان فاعل الجملة (**you / we / they**) او اسم جمع.

• اذا اردنا **نفي** الجملة ، نضيف (**not**) بعد (**was / were**).

• اذا اردنا تحويل الجملة الى **استفهامية** ، نقدم (**was / were**) على الفاعل ونضع علامة استفهام في نهاية الجملة.

Ex15: He (be) at the office yesterday. (Correct) **صحح الجملة**

- He **was** at the office yesterday.

- He **was not** at the office yesterday.

- **Was** he at the office yesterday?

Ex16: They (be) at the office yesterday. (Correct)

- They **were** at the office yesterday.

- They **were not** at the office yesterday.

- **Were** they at the office yesterday?

14. افعال الكينونة الماضية (**was / were**) اذا لم يتبعها (**فعل مستمر**) تعتبر ماضي بسيط

وكذلك فعل التملك الماضي (**had**) اذا لم يتبعه (**تصريف ثالث**) يعتبر ماضي بسيط مثل:

Ex17: He **was** at the office.

- He **was not** at the office.

- **Was** he at the office?

Ex18: Suha **had** a laptop.

- Suha **didn't have** a laptop.

- **Did** Suha **have** a laptop?



15. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (Yes/No) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **Yes**
not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **No**

Ex19: Was she late yesterday? (**Yes/No**)

- **Yes, she was.**
- **No, she wasn't.**

Ex20: Did he play tennis last Friday? (**Yes/No**)

- **Yes, he did.**
- **No, he didn't.**

16. أمثلة إضافية:

Ex21: Ali saw a film last night, but he (not like) it. (**Correct**) **صح الجملة**

- Ali saw a film last night, but he **did not** like it.

Ex22: Did you (visited / **visit**) the museum last summer?

Ex23: Yousif (sell) his car last month. (**Correct**)

- Yousif **sold** his car last month.

Ex24: He (be) sick last week. (**Correct**)

- He **was** sick last week.

Ex25: They (be) very tired yesterday. (**Correct**)

- They **were** very tired yesterday.

Lesson 4 (AB) P. 10 - 11

C.p10/ Complete the conversation with the correct forms of the present perfect simple.

اكمل المحادثة بالصيغة الصحيحة للمضارع التام البسيط

A: I can't see the board.

B: (you / lose) your glasses again? **Have you lost**

A: Yes, I have. (you / see) them anywhere? **Have you seen**

B: No, I (you / tell) the teacher? **haven't / Have you told**

A: Yes, I and I (write) a notice. **have / have written**

B: Really? I (not see) your notice. (the secretary / put) it on the school noticeboard yet? **haven't seen / Has the secretary put**

A: Yes, she, but nobody (find) my glasses. **has / has found**



D.p11/ Complete the sentences with the past simple or the present perfect simple form of the verbs in brackets. Write PS (past simple) or PPS (present perfect simple) after each sentence.

اكمل الجمل التالية بصيغة الماضي البسيط او المضارع التام البسيط باستخدام الافعال بين الاقواس. اكتب PS في نهاية جمل الماضي البسيط واكتب PPS في نهاية جمل المضارع التام البسيط

Example. (break) 'Help! Help! I think I my leg.' **have broken / PPS**

Last year, my sister her arm in a car accident. **broke / PS**

1. (make) Come to my house for a coffee. I a delicious cake. **have made / PPS**
..... it last night? **Did you make / PS**

2. (write) (you) to Hasan yet? **Have you written / PPS**
Yes, I to him last week. **wrote / PS**

3. (have) Would you like some chicken and rice? No, thanks. I my supper. **have had / PPS**
Really? What time (you) it? **did you have / PS**

4. (eat) There's no cheese in the fridge. Somebody it all. **has eaten / PPS**
Sorry, that was me. I it for breakfast. **ate / PS**

E.p11/ Choose the correct option.

اختر الاختيار الصحيح

Which market *did you visit* / ***have you visited*** recently?

I ***spent*** / *have spent* a week in Oxford last summer studying English with my friends, and I ***visited*** / *have visited* the Covered Market while I was there. I saw / ***have seen*** many markets in my life, but this one is very interesting and traditional. People *sold* / ***have sold*** things like meat and cheese there since 1774. Next year, I'm going back to the UK, this time with my little brother. He *never went* / ***has never been*** to the UK, so I'm excited to show him the Covered Market!

U1: Lesson 5 (SB) P. 11 (A trip to Scotland) رحلة الى اسكتلندا

Lesson 5 (AB) P. 12 - 13

C.p13/ Complete the sentences with the present perfect simple, using *been* or *gone*.

اكمل الجمل التالية بالمضارع التام البسيط مستخدماً *been* او *gone*

- They to Dubai. They'll be back in Iraq in five days. **have gone**
- What's Casablanca like? I don't know. In't there. **have / been**
- The Al Badri family isn't here at the moment. They on holiday. **have gone**
- Is Adam here or he to football practice? **has / gone**
- I want to go to Scotland. I there twice. It's a nice place. **have been**
- I'll show you around Baghdad. to the museum? **Have you been**
- Where is Dad? I don't know. I think he to the post office. **has gone**
- I to the shops and I bought some cakes. Would you like one? **have been**
- you ever to Venice? It's a wonderful city and I have some friends there. We must go and visit them soon. **Have / been**
- Where Hassan? He was here a minute ago, I need to speak to him. **has / gone**
- My friend just to Iceland and she told me she saw the Northern Lights. **has / been**
- Where my friend's dog? I can't see it anywhere. Can you help me find it, please? **has / gone**



U1: Lesson 6 (SB) P. 12 (You haven't met him, have you?)

انت لم تلتقي به اليس كذلك

الاسئلة الذيلية Question tags

1. نستخدم الاسئلة الذيلية للتحقق من المعلومات او لأخذ معلومات اكثر.
2. نستخدم الفعل المساعد الموجود في الجملة الاصلية ، ان لم يكن هنالك فعل مساعد نستخدم احد الافعال المساعدة (does / do / did).
3. مع الزمن المضارع ، نستخدم (does) اذا كان فاعل الجملة اسم مفرد او احد الضمائر (he / she / it).
4. مع الزمن المضارع ، نستخدم (do) اذا كان فاعل الجملة اسم جمع او احد الضمائر (I / we / you / they).
5. مع الزمن الماضي ، نستخدم (did) مهما كان الفاعل.
6. نغير صيغة الفعل المساعد ، فيكون منفي مع الجمل المثبتة ويكون مثبت مع الجمل المنفية.
7. بعد الفعل المساعد نضع ضمير الفاعل الموجود في الجملة الاصلية ، واذا كان الفاعل اسم عندها يتم تحويله الى ضمير فاعل مناسب وبعدها نضع علامة استفهام.
8. ملخص النقاط السابقة في القاعدة التالية:

? + ضمير الفاعل + فعل مساعد منفي → (الجمل المثبتة)
 ? + ضمير الفاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت → (الجمل المنفية)

- Ex1: Layla's fourteen, **isn't she**?
 Ex2: You didn't copy my homework, **did you**?
 Ex3: You like chocolate ice-cream, **don't you**?
 Ex4: You don't like milk in your coffee, **do you**?
 Ex5: Salwa won't remember me, **will she**?
 Ex6: You know Catherine, **don't you**?
 Ex7: She's Canadian, **isn't she**?
 Ex8: They're working hard, **aren't they**?
 Ex9: Adam's got a brother, **hasn't he**?
 Ex10: You've got four brothers, **haven't you**?
 Ex11: He was in the match yesterday, **wasn't he**?
 Ex12: They were late, **weren't they**?
 Ex13: You knew the answer, **didn't you**?
 Ex14: They said sorry, **didn't they**?
 Ex15: We've never met her, **have we**?
 Ex16: You've been working hard, **haven't you**?
 Ex17: I can run quite fast, **can't I**?
 Ex18: You'll remember, **won't you**?
 Ex19: It'll be easy, **won't it**?
 Ex20: You don't like frightening films, **do you**?
 Ex21: He isn't very sociable, **is he**?
 Ex22: They aren't very helpful, **are they**?
 Ex23: You haven't got a sister, **have you**?
 Ex24: She hasn't got a car, **has she**?
 Ex25: They weren't annoyed with us, **were they**?
 Ex26: You didn't tell anyone, **did you**?
 Ex27: You haven't done the essay yet, **have you**?
 Ex28: Fatima can't drive, **can she**?
 Ex29: Yousef won't know the answer, **will he**?
 Ex30: It won't be difficult, **will it**?

Lesson 6 (AB) P. 14 - 15

B.p14/ Complete the questions with the correct tags.

اكمل الاسئلة الذيلية التالية

1. She lives in Basra,? **doesn't she**
2. He has a flat in Beirut,? **doesn't he**
3. You like Lebanese food,? **don't you**
4. You haven't met Jameel,? **have you**
5. They didn't expect to see us,? **did they**
6. We aren't making too much noise,? **are we**



C.p14/ Read and complete the question tags.

اقرأ واكمل الاسئلة الذيلية التالية

Rana: You're Liz Pitt, you? **aren't**

Liz: That's right.

Rana: I'm Rana Sami. We met in Beirut last year, we? **didn't**

Liz: In Beirut?

Rana: Yes. You were studying there, you? **weren't**

Liz: That's right.

Rana: You still don't remember me, you? **do**

Liz: No, I don't, I'm afraid. I've got a really bad memory.

Rana: Don't worry about it.

Liz: Wait a minute. I remember you now. But you weren't wearing glasses in Beirut, you? **were**

Rana: You're right. I wasn't.

U1: Lesson 7 (SB) P. 13 (What have they been doing?) ما الذي كانوا يفعلونه

المضارع التام المستمر Present perfect continuous

1. نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث قد انتهى حديثاً وإنك لاتزال ترى نتائج الحدث الآن وحسب القاعدة التالية:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

تكملة + **ing** + فعل + **been** + **(has / have)** + فاعل

حالة النفي Negative

تكملة + **ing** + فعل + **been** + **not** + **(has / have)** + فاعل

حالة الاستفهام Question

تكملة + **ing** + فعل + **been** + فاعل + **(Has / Have)** + ؟2. نستخدم **(has)** اذا كان الفاعل اسم مفرد او الضمانر **(he / she / it)**.3. نستخدم **(have)** اذا كان الفاعل اسم جمع او الضمانر **(I / we / you / they)**.4. ظروف الزمان يمكن ان تأتي مع هذا الزمن هي (فترة زمنية + **recently / all**).5. يمكن استخدام **(since / for)** ايضا مع المضارع التام المستمر وبنفس شروط استخدامها في المضارع التام البسيط.

6. هنالك بعض الافعال التي لا نستخدمها او يندر استخدامها مع المضارع التام المستمر وهي الافعال (الثابتة) مثل:

يتصور **imagine** / يشك **doubt** / يحب **like** / يكره **hate** / يحب **love** / **be**يفهم **understand** / يميز **recognize** / يفترض **suppose** / يملك **have** / يعيش **live** / يعرف **know** / يرى **see**يتذكر **remember** / يريد **want** / يفضل **prefer** / يدرك **realize** / لا يحب **dislike**

7. نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع الافعال (المتحركة) مثل:

Ex1: They **have been talking** for the last hour.Ex2: Ali **has been teaching** at the university since July.Ex3: Mary **has been shopping** all day.

8. يأتي هذا الموضوع في الامتحان إما على شكل اختيارات او تصحيح صيغة او تحويل جملة من زمن معين الى المضارع التام المستمر.

Ex4: I (paint) a chair. (Present perfect continuous)

- I **have been painting** a chair.

Ex5: She's writing letters. She started at two o'clock.

(Write in present perfect continuous with 'since / for')

- She **has been writing since** two o'clock.

Ex6: Layla is in the kitchen. She (**has been cooking** / cooks) for three hours now.

Ex7: What (you / do)? Your hands are blue. (Present perfect continuous)

- What **have you been doing**? Your hands are blue.

Ex8: I can't find my glasses, I (**have been looking** / have looked / looked) for them all day long.

Ex9: We're bored. We (are playing / **have been playing** / play) computer games recently.

9. يمكن استخدام (كم المدة How long) مع المضارع التام المستمر وحسب القاعدة التالية:

(How long) + (has / have) + فاعل + been + فعل + ing + تكملة + ?

Ex10: **How long** have you been waiting here?

Ex11: **How long** has Nada been painting this picture?

10. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (Yes/No) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

Yes , فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل ,
not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **No**

Ex12: Have they been playing football all afternoon? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, they have.**
- **No, they haven't.**

Ex13: Has Rana been doing her homework recently? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, she has.**
- **No, she hasn't.**

11. أمثلة إضافية:

Ex14: He's going to fail his exam. He (not work) very hard. (Present perfect continuous)

- He's going to fail his exam. He **hasn't been working** very hard.

Ex15: Your sister is busy cooking. (How long / cook)

(Question: Present perfect continuous)

- How long **have you been cooking**?

Ex16: You have a friend who is learning Japanese. You ask: (How long / learn / Japanese)

(Write a question using the words in brackets)

- How long **have you been learning** Japanese?

Ex17: You arrive late for your appointment. You ask: (How long / wait) (Present perfect continuous)

- How long **have you been waiting**?

Ex18: He is a writer. He (write) for twenty years. (Present perfect continuous)

- He is a writer. He **has been writing** for twenty years.



Lesson 7 (AB) P. 16 - 17

A.p16/ Complete the sentences with the present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.
 اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغة المضارع التام المستمر للأفعال التي بين الاقواس

Example. You look hot. How long (work) in the garden? **have you been working**

1. She's tired because she (not sleep) well recently. **hasn't been sleeping**
2. Salwa's in the kitchen. She (cook) for three hours now. **has been cooking**
3. We're bored. We (play) computer games all afternoon. **have been playing**
4. I can't find my glasses. I (look for) them all day. **have been looking for**
5. He's going to fail his exam. He (not work) very hard. **hasn't been working**

B.p16/ Complete the sentences with the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغة المضارع التام البسيط او المضارع التام المستمر للأفعال التي بين الاقواس

1. I (run) all morning and my legs are very tired now. **have been running**
2. Somebody (eat) the biscuits that were on the kitchen table. There are none left now. **has eaten**
3. I'm very sorry I'm late. (wait) for a long time? **Have you been waiting**
4. How long (know) Mark? He seems a very nice man and a very good dentist. **have you known**
5. Huda loves books. She (read) all afternoon. She (read) already eight chapters of that very long book. **has been reading / has / read**
6. Adam and Ann-Marie (travel) for six months, and they (visit) many beautiful countries so far. **have been travelling / have visited**

C.p17/ Write sentences in the present perfect continuous with for or since.

اكتب الجمل التالية بصيغة المضارع التام المستمر مع for او since

Example. They are playing football. They started 20 minutes ago.

- **They've been playing football for 20 minutes.**

Example. She's writing letters. She started at two o'clock.

- **She's been writing letters since two o'clock.**

1. I'm writing a poem. I started on Tuesday.

- **I've been writing a poem since Tuesday.**

2. We're waiting for a bus. We started waiting at ten o'clock.

- **We've been waiting for a bus since ten o'clock.**

3. You're watching TV. You started an hour ago.

- **You've been watching TV for an hour.**

4. They're making Eid cakes. They started two days ago.

- **They've been making Eid cakes for two days.**

5. It's raining. It started two hours ago.

- **It's been raining for two hours.**

6. She's crying. She started crying ten minutes ago.

- **She's been crying for ten minutes.**



U1: Lesson 8 (SB) P. 14 - 15 (Babylon International Festival)

المهرجان البابلي العالمي

Unit

1

Lesson 8
AB 18-19

Babylon International Festival

- 1 Talk about the title of the lesson and the photos. Who attended the Festival the last time it was held?
- 2 Look at the three texts. Which one is a programme, which one is a letter and which one is a magazine article?
- 3 Read the texts and do Exercise A in the Activity Book.

A

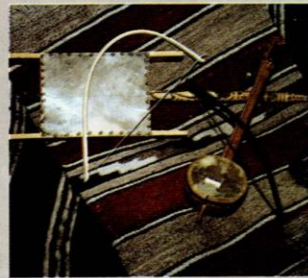
BABYLON

INTERNATIONAL FESTIVAL



The Babylon International Festival for International Arts and Cultures is held each year in the ancient city of Babylon, which is about 85 kilometres south of Baghdad. Ever since the first Festival in 1987, the event has attracted many excellent groups from all regions of Iraq and all over the world. They come to perform many types of music, especially folk music, musical theatre, opera and ballet. Famous writers and poets come to discuss and read their works, and there are many lectures and seminars held on a wide range of literary, artistic, cultural and archaeological

topics. The Festival has become a popular media event and is now discussed in print and on television and on the internet by a very wide audience.

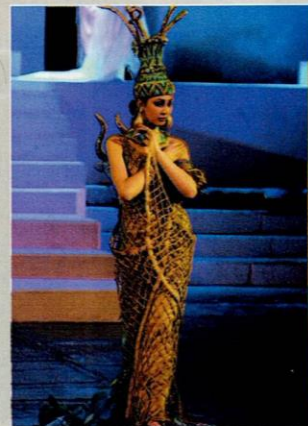


The beautiful and historic city of Babylon is the perfect venue for this kind of international festival. There are three main theatres, all equipped with modern sound and lighting equipment, recording and transmission systems, and the best facilities for the artists to use to prepare for their performances.

The Babylonian Theatre is the biggest amphitheatre in the city and has kept its ancient atmosphere.

The Al Arsh (Throne) Auditorium is the largest hall in historical Babylon. It was once the administrative centre of the Babylonian Empire, used to receive kings and victorious military leaders.

Ninimach Temple Hall was once the private temple of Ninimach, the 'Great Lady of the Heavens', who used to worship there. It is now used for some of the smaller but very high quality performances in the Festival.



B

Dear Mike,

Thanks for your email. I'm having a great time at the moment. We've got the Babylon International Festival here this month so there's lots to see and do.

I've been to three plays so far this week! Two of the plays were by Iraqi writers. They were both excellent. One was by a Lebanese writer and had the famous Tunisian artist Latifa in it. At one point she started chanting a really popular poem and some people behind us joined in. My father got really annoyed with them and told them to be quiet! I was really embarrassed.

I've also attended an interesting seminar on the history of Babylon and how the Festival came to be. It had a lot of interesting videos and pictures that amazed me. In fact, I actually bought the documentary CD because I knew my sister would enjoy learning more about the fabulous history of Babylon.



I've also been to a really good photo exhibition. It's given me some brilliant new ideas. I've decided I want to be a professional photographer one day. So when the school holidays start, I'm going to practise all day long with my new camera!

Write to me soon,

Bilal

PS I'm sending you a magazine article about the Babylon International Festival and a programme of the events.

C

Monday 5 th May	3 p.m.	Al Arsh Auditorium	<i>In Our Eyes</i> – an exhibition of the work of famous Iraqi painters (Suad Al-Attar, Ala Bashir, Faeq Hassan, Abdul Qadir Al Rassam)
	6 p.m.	Babylonian Theatre	<i>Hamlet</i> – an Iraqi version of the world-famous Shakespeare play
Tuesday 6 th May	4 p.m.	Al Arsh Auditorium	<i>Behind the Veil</i> – An award-winning film by Tunisian director Fatima Zahra El Hani
	7 p.m.	City Centre lobby	Opening of <i>New Eyes</i> – an exhibition of images of city life by young Arab photographers



المهرجان البابلي العالمي Babylon International Festival

قطعة الوحدة الاولى 2

1. When was the first Babylon Festival held? متى اقيم اول مهرجان لبابل
- In 1987. في عام 1987.
2. What has Bilal seen at the Festival? ماذا شاهد بلال في المهرجان
- Three plays, a seminar, and a photo exhibition. ثلاث مسرحيات ، وندوة ، ومعرض صور
3. What play is being performed on Monday 5th May? ما اي مسرحية سيتم عرضها يوم الاثنين الخامس من ايار
- Hamlet. هاملت
4. Why is the Festival famous? لماذا هذا المهرجان مشهور
- Because it attracts artists from all over the world. لأنه يجذب الفنانين من كافة انحاء العالم
5. Which are the three main venues at Babylon International Festival?
ماهي المسارح الثلاثة الرئيسية في المهرجان البابلي العالمي
- Babylonian Theatre, Al Arsh Auditorium, Ninimach Temple Hall.
المسرح البابلي ، وقاعة العرش ، وقاعة معبد نينماش
6. Which venue used to be an amphitheatre? أي مسرح كان يستخدم كمدرج
- Babylonian Theatre. المسرح البابلي
7. What did the Tunisian artist Latifa start to do at a certain point?
ما الذي بدأت فعله الفنانة التونسية لطيفة في مرحلة ما على المسرح
- Latifa started chanting a very popular poem. بدأت لطيفة بإنشاد قصيدة شهيرة
8. Why was the seminar on the history of Babylon interesting? لماذا كانت ندوة تاريخ بابل مثيرة للاهتمام
- Because it focused on the history of Babylon and the Festival, offering many interesting videos and pictures. لأنها ركزت على تاريخ بابل والمهرجان ، وعرضت العديد من الفيديوهات والصور الشيقة
9. Which idea did Bilal get from a photo exhibition he went to?
ما الفكرة التي استلهمها بلال اثناء زيارته معرض الصور الفوتوغرافية
- The photo exhibition made Bilal decide that he would like to be a professional photographer in the future. دفعه معرض الصور الفوتوغرافية إلى أن يقرر أن يصبح مصورًا محترفًا في المستقبل
10. What is Bilal sending to Mike? ماذا ارسل بلال إلى مايك
- Bilal is sending Mike a magazine article about the Festival and a programme of the events.
بلال ارسل إلى مايك مقالاً من مجلة عن المهرجان وبرنامج الفعاليات
11. The first Babylon International Festival was held in 1987. إن أول مهرجان بابلي عالمي اقيم في عام 1987.
12. There are three main theatres used for the festival. هنالك ثلاث مسارح رئيسية تم استخدامها للمهرجان
13. The Babylonian Theatre is the largest amphitheatre in the city. المسرح البابلي هو اكبر مدرج في المدينة
14. The Festival is a popular media event and is attended by newspaper, Internet and television journalists. المهرجان هو حدث اعلامي شائع ويحضره صحفيين الجرائد والانترنت والتلفاز
15. Ninimach Temple Hall is used for some of the smaller performances in the Festival.
قاعة معبد نينماش استخدمت لبعض الفعاليات الصغيرة في المهرجان



16. Poets, novelists and short-story writers come to **read** their work aloud and discuss it together.
يأتي الشعراء ، وكُتّاب الروايات والقصص القصيرة لـ **يقرأون** أعمالهم بصوت عالي ويناقشوها مع بعض
17. There are lots of music performances, including folk music, musical theatre, **opera** and ballet.
هناك العديد من الاستعراضات الموسيقية ، من ضمنها الموسيقى الشعبية والمسرحية الموسيقية ، **الابيرا** والباليه
18. The theatres are all equipped with excellent **lighting** and sound equipment.
كل المسارح مجهزة بـ **إضاءة** ممتازة ومعدات صوتية

Lesson 8 (AB) P. 18 - 19

تمرين (A , B) ص 18-19. حل التمارين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

U1: Lesson 9 (SB) P. 16 (What are you really like?) ما الذي تحبه حقاً

Adjectives + prepositions الصفات وحروف الجر

- يمكن للعديد من الصفات أن تتبّع بحروف جر وهي عادةً تكون ثابتة **ويجب حفظها**.

1. الصفات التي تتبّع بـ (about) هي:

- angry **غاضب** → My mother was **angry about** my school report.
 annoyed **منزعج** → He was very **annoyed about** the end of the holiday.
 excited **مُتحمس** → I am really **excited about** the opportunity to work in this company.
 sure **متأكد** → We're still not **sure about** going to the museum.
 worried **قلق** → I am not **worried about** her, she can take care of herself.
 sorry **متأسف** → I am **sorry about** your car.

2. الصفات التي تتبّع بـ (with) هي:

- angry **غاضب** → My father was **angry with** me.
 annoyed **منزعج** → He was very **annoyed with** me because of my bad marks.
 bored **يشعر بالملل** → Nada was rather **bored with** her life in a small town.
 disappointed **خائب الامل** → I am **disappointed with** the results.
 pleased **مسرور** → We are **pleased with** the problems that have been resolved.

3. الصفات التي تتبّع بـ (of) هي:

- afraid **خائف** → He's **afraid of** snakes.
 frightened **خائف** → I am **frightened of** walking home alone in the dark.
 jealous **غيور** → Ahmed is **jealous of** Ali because Ali is a good football player.
 proud **فخور** → I am **proud of** you.

4. الصفات التي تتبّع بـ (in) هي:

- interested **مهتم** → She is very **interested in** Japanese culture.

5. الصفات التي تتبّع بـ (from) هي:

- different **مختلف** → Adam is so **different from** his brother.

6. الصفات التي تتبّع بـ (at) هي:

- good **جيد** → Duaa is **good at** English.
 bad **سيء** → Duaa is **bad at** Chemistry.



Lesson 9 (AB) P. 20 – 21

A.p21/ Complete the sentences with prepositions from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية بأستخدام حروف الجر التي في الصندوق

about / from / in / of / with

1. Are you excited the holidays? **about**
2. I was really pleased my presents. **with**
3. I'm sorry the mess in this room. **about**
4. Layla looks ill. I'm worried her. **about**
5. We've been watching TV for an hour. I'm bored it. **with**
6. Are you afraid snakes? **of**
7. Was she angry the letter? **about**
8. You shouldn't be jealous Ammar. He has problems, too. **of**
9. I'm not interested history, but I like geography. **in**
10. You're very different your brother, aren't you? **from**

U1: Round up (SB) P. 17 للاطلاع

Revision (AB) P. 22 – 23 للاطلاع

Test (AB) P. 24 – 27

A.p24/ Complete the sentences with words from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية بأستخدام الكلمات التي في الصندوق

bad-tempered سيء المزاج ، منفعل / bored يشعر بالملل / easy-going متساهل / expensive غالي
 generous كريم / popular شائع / sociable اجتماعي / worried قلق

1. I'm Let's go to the cinema. **bored**
2. Don't buy those pastries. Everything in that shop is too **expensive**
3. My sister is very..... She never gets angry. **easy-going**
4. We were very when my grandfather was in hospital last month. **worried**
5. Calm down and stop shouting. There's no need to be **bad-tempered**
6. Adel always helps people and gives to charity. He is a very person. **generous**
7. Everybody wants to be Karim's friend. He is one of the most boys in my school. **popular**
8. My Aunt Farida invites her friends round all the time. She also loves meeting new people. She is very **sociable**



B.p24/ Match the sentences. Then put the verbs in brackets in the present simple or present continuous.

اربط الجمل التالية وبعدها ضع الافعال بصيغة المضارع البسيط او المضارع المستمر

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Take your passport and papers with you. f | a. He always (work) there on Saturdays. |
| 2. I don't need an umbrella. b | b. She never (have) breakfast. |
| 3. Mariam isn't eating anything. c | c. That's why I (put) on my jacket. |
| 4. I'm cold. d | d. It (not rain) at the moment. |
| 5. Dan's at the shop. a | e. I (not wear) my glasses today. |
| 6. I can't see the board. e | f. The police (often / stop) cars on that road. |
- 1f. Take your passport and papers with you. The police **often stop** cars on that road.
- 2d. I don't need an umbrella. It **is not raining** at the moment.
- 3b. Mariam isn't eating anything. She never **has** breakfast.
- 4c. I'm cold. That's why I **am putting** on my jacket.
- 5a. Dan's at the shop. He always **works** there on Saturdays.
- 6e. I can't see the board. I **am not wearing** my glasses today.

C.p25/ Complete the questions with the correct tags.

اكمل الاسئلة الذيلية للجمل التالية

- Example.** You live in Kirkuk,? **don't you**
1. Mark hasn't gone home yet,? **has he**
2. There weren't many people at the park,? **were there**
3. It's been raining,? **hasn't it**
4. I'm not making too much noise,? **am I**
5. Ahmed doesn't wear glasses,? **does he**
6. Halah has been ill for a week,? **hasn't she**
7. They're coming to stay next month,? **aren't they**
8. It was terribly hot yesterday,? **wasn't it**
9. I don't look like my mother,? **do I**
10. You've been swimming,? **haven't you**



D.p25/ Complete the dialogue with the present perfect simple or the past simple.

اكمل المحادثة التالية بأستخدام المضارع التام البسيط او الماضي البسيط

A: Can I borrow your English book?

B: Im sorry, but I don't have it. I (take) took it to school yesterday and (leave) left it there. Where's yours? What (you / do) have you done with it?

A: I have (lose) have lost mine. I (look) have looked everywhere for it but I (not find) haven't found it yet.

B: Perhaps it (fall) fell out of your bag when you were walking home from school this afternoon.

A: That's possible. I (hear) heard a funny noise on my way home, but I (not look) didn't look round because I (not think) didn't think it was anything important.

B: (call) Have you called any of your friends that were with you? I'm sure someone (find) has found it somewhere, it's a big book and difficult to miss.

F.p26/ Write a letter to a friend in Britain describing a traditional celebration in Iraq.

اكتب رسالة لصديقك في بريطانيا توصف فيها احتفال تقليدي في العراق
(انشاء الوحدة الاولى)

Ramadan in Iraq رمضان في العراق

Dear Ahmed,

You asked me to tell you about Ramadan in my country. It is a special time. Ramadan is the month of charity, fasting and forgiveness.

In Ramadan people stop eating or drinking from dawn to sunset. The restaurants are closed all the day until the evening. After that, people go to the mosques and for praying. In Ramadan, people usually visit each other at night.

People like Ramadan because it combines the members of the family and they enjoy the religious atmosphere.

See you soon,

Ali

عزيزي أحمد،

طلبت مني أن أخبرك عن رمضان في بلدي. إنه وقت مميز. رمضان شهر الاحسان والصيام والاستغفار.

في رمضان يتوقف الناس عن الأكل والشرب من الفجر حتى غروب الشمس. المطاعم مغلقة طوال اليوم حتى المساء. بعد ذلك يذهب الناس إلى المساجد ويصلون. في رمضان ، عادة ما يزور الناس بعضهم البعض في الليل.

يحب الناس رمضان لأنه يجمع بين أفراد الأسرة ويتمتعون بالجو الديني.

اراك قريباً،

علي



G.p27/ Match the sentence halves. Then write the sentences and add question tags.

اربط نصفي الجملة وبعدها اكتب الجمل واضف لهم اسئلة ذيلية

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Babylon City f | a. an English name. |
| 2. Al-Kindi wrote c | b. deserts in Europe. |
| 3. Falcons have got d | c. many books on geometry, medicine and philosophy. |
| 4. Most people didn't have mobile phones g | d. yellow eyes. |
| 5. Pierre isn't a | e. Lebanese. |
| 6. The famous singer Fairouz is e | f. is about 85 kilometres south of Baghdad. |
| 7. There aren't any b | g. 20 years ago. |
- 1f. Babylon City is about 85 kilometres south of Baghdad, **isn't it?**
- 2c. Al-Kindi wrote many books on geometry, medicine and philosophy, **didn't he?**
- 3d. Falcons have got yellow eyes, **haven't they?**
- 4g. Most people didn't have mobile phones 20 years ago, **did they?**
- 5a. Pierre isn't an English name, **is it?**
- 6e. The famous singer Fairouz is Lebanese, **isn't she?**
- 7b. There aren't any deserts in Europe, **are there?**

نهاية الوحدة الاولى

كن صبوراً ، الدروس التي تتعلمها اليوم ستفعلك غداً



UNIT TWO / الوحدة الثانية

U2: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 20 (Keep in touch) ابقى على تواصل

Lesson 1 (AB) P. 28 - 29

A.p28/ Here are some of the things people said about communication. Use verbs from the box in the past simple to complete the sentences.

ضع الافعال الموجودة في الصندوق بزمان الماضي البسيط لتكمل الجمل

be / buy يشتري / call يتصل / get يحصل / give يعطي / go يذهب / not like لا يحب / receive يستلم
say يقول / send يرسل / start يبدأ / take يأخذ / tell يخبر / think يعتقد

Example. 'My parents me a mobile phone for my birthday.' gave

Yesterday, for example, I to my friend's house after school. I my mother from the bus and her I'd be late. went / called / told

I a mobile from my father when I secondary school. got / started

Yesterday, I this really nice photo of my brother Ali. He it much. He it was too close. took / didn't like / said

I my mobile with my own pocket money. bought

They it would be really useful. And they right. thought / were

Some of my friends me birthday cards in the post, but I also a few e-cards.
sent / received

B.p28/ Match the words and write compound nouns.

اربط الكلمات التالية لتكوين اسماء مركبة

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. phone b | a. computer | 1b. phone game | لعبة هاتف |
| 2. laptop a | b. game | 2a. laptop computer | كمبيوتر محمول ، لابتوب |
| 3. mobile f | c. message | 3f. mobile phone | هاتف نقال |
| 4. camera g | d. card | 4g. camera phone | هاتف يحتوي على كاميرا |
| 5. text c | e. money | 5c. text message | رسالة نصية |
| 6. pocket e | f. phone | 6e. pocket money | محفظة نقود |
| 7. birthday d | g. phone | 7d. birthday card | بطاقة عيد ميلاد |



HW.p29/ What do these text messages mean? Write them in normal English.

ماذا تعني الرسائل النصية المختصرة التالية ، اكتبهم كرسائل كاملة

1. Do u want 2 c a film 2night?

- Do you want to see a film tonight?

2. R U OK?

- Are you OK?

3. Y R U angry 2day?

- Why are you angry today?

4. Talk 2 U L8R!

- Talk to you later!

5. C U L8R!

- See you later!

6. W8 4 me after school.

- Wait for me after school.

U2: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 21 (Plug it in and turn it on) اشبكه بالقابس وقم بتشغيله

Giving instructions اعطاء التعليمات

• يمكن اعطاء التعليمات بطريقتين:

1. الطريقة الاولى: بأستخدام الجمل الامرية (Imperatives).

1. جملة الامر لاتحتوي على فاعل وتبدأ بفعل مجرد (مصدر).

Ex1: Go to bed.

Ex2: Open the window.

Ex3: Stay at home.

2. في الجمل الامرية المثبتة نستخدم نفس الفعل (المصدر المجرد) للتعامل مع المفرد او الجمع.

Ex4: Come here, Layla.

Ex5: Come here, Layla and Ali.

Ex6: Plug it in and turn it on.

Ex7: Write your name at the top of every page.

Ex8: Please answer all the questions.

3. لنفي جملة الامر نستخدم (Don't) ونضعها في بداية الجملة.

Ex9: Don't go to bed.

Ex10: Don't open the window.

Ex11: Don't stay at home.

Ex12: Don't waste time, Rashid.

Ex13: DANGER! DO NOT SWIM HERE.

Ex14: Don't turn the radio off. I'm listening to it.

Ex15: Don't draw pictures in your notebook.

Ex16: Please do not walk on the grass.

4. يمكن استخدام الجمل الامرية لأعطاء اوامر او دعوات او تعليمات.

Ex17: Pay attention, please. Don't talk. (Order) امر

Ex18: Please come to my party on Saturday. (Invitation) دعوة

Ex19: Select a programme and press the red button. (Instruction) تعليمات



الطريقة الثانية: باستخدام الحالة الشرطية الصفرية (Zero conditional if).

1. تتكون الحالة الشرطية الصفريّة من جملتين في زمن **المضارع البسيط** ، جملة **فعل الشرط** (جملة **if**) وجملة جواب الشرط (الجملة الرئيسية).
2. يمكن إعطاء التعليمات (الأوامر) بدون ذكر الفاعل في هذه الحالة في جملة جواب الشرط (الجملة الرئيسية).

Ex20: Press the green button if you want to send a text.

Ex21: If you **want** to pass the exam, **study** hard.

Zero conditional "if" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

1. هذا النوع من الجمل الشرطية يعبر عن **حقائق** ، وفي هذه الحالة تكون جملة فعل الشرط وجملة جواب الشرط بزمان **(المضارع البسيط Present simple)** وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + (s + فعل / فعل مجرد) + فاعل , تکملة + (s + فعل / فعل مجرد) + فاعل
تكملة + (s + فعل / فعل مجرد) + فاعل + If + فاعل + (s + فعل / فعل مجرد) + فاعل

- ## 2. ملاحظات هامة تنطبق على كل انواع الجمل الشرطية:

- اذا جاءت **(if)** في **بداية** الجملة يجب ان نضع **(فارزة)** بين الجملتين ، واذا جاءت في **وسط** الجملة لانضع **فارزة** بين الجملتين.
 - الجملة التي تأتي بعد الاداة **(if)** مباشرة تسمى **(جملة فعل الشرط)** اما الجملة الاخرى تسمى **(جملة جواب الشرط)**.
3. هنالك **دلائل** في الجملة تعرف من خلالها ان الجملة مضارع بسيط مثل:

(always / often / usually / sometimes / never / seldom / every / each)

4. يكون الفعل (مصدر مجرد) إذا كان فاعله اسم جمع أو الضمائر (I / we / you / they) ، ونُضيف له (s / es) إذا كان فاعله اسم مفرد أو الضمائر (he / she / it).

Ex1: If I **go** to bed early, I **wake up** early.

Ex2: If you **want** to send a text, **press** the green button.

Ex3: If you **click** on this icon, the computer **saves** your documents.

Ex4: Your eyes **get** tired if you **look** at a computer screen for too long.

Ex5: If you **heat** ice, it **melts**.

5. أفعال الكينونة المضارعة (is / am / are) إذا لم يأتي بعدها فعل ينتهي بـ (ing) تعتبر (مضارع بسيط) وكذلك أفعال التملك المضارعة (have / has) إذا لم يأتي بعدها (تصريف ثالث p.p) تعتبر (مضارع بسيط).

Ex6: Snakes **bite** if they **are** frightened.

Ex7: If his brother **has** a cold, he usually **catches** it.

6. اذا وجدنا (be) في جملة المضارع البسيط نحولها الى (is / am / are) حسب الفاعل الذي قبلها ، حيث نقوم بتحويل (be) الى (is) اذا كان الفاعل (اسم مفرد / he / she / it) والى (are) اذا كان الفاعل (اسم جمع / we / you / they) والى (am) اذا كان الفاعل (I).

Ex8: I cycle to work if the weather (be) fine. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- I cycle to work if the weather **is** fine.



7. إذا وجدنا (not) في جملة المضارع البسيط نضع قبلها (do) إذا كان الفاعل اسم جمع أو الضمانر (I / we / you / they) أو نضع (does) إذا كان الفاعل اسم مفرد أو الضمانر (he / she / it).

Ex9: If I (not bring) some books, I usually get bored on the plane. (Correct the verb)

- If I **don't bring** some books, I usually get bored on the plane.

Ex10: A plant dies if it (not get) enough water. (Correct the verb)

- A plant dies if it **doesn't get** enough water.

8. أمثلة إضافية:

Ex11: People (gets / **get**) fat if they never do sport.

Ex12: If you (leave) chocolate in the sun, it goes soft. (Write the verb in the correct form)

- If you **leave** chocolate in the sun, it goes soft.

Ex13: His parents get worried if he (come) home late. (Write the verb in the correct form)

- His parents get worried if he **comes** home late.

Ex14: What happens if you (**mix** / mixes) red and yellow paint?

Ex15: What happens if she (mix / **mixes**) red and yellow paint?

Ex16: If I lend my brother CDs, he always them. (**loses** / lost / lose)

Ex17: If her husband (cook), he (burn) the food. (Zero conditional)

- If her husband **cooks**, he **burns** the food.

Lesson 2 (AB) P. 30 - 31

C.p30/ Match a word from each list and write the compound nouns. Check you know the meaning of each one.

اربط الكلمات لتكوين اسماء مركبة

1. hair e	a. camera	1e. hair dryer	مجفف شعر
2. microwave h	b. alarm	2h. microwave oven	فرن المايكرويف
3. washing f	c. booth	3f. washing machine	غسالة
4. digital a	d. control	4a. digital camera	كاميرا رقمية
5. computer i	e. dryer	5i. computer mouse	فأرة الكمبيوتر
6. remote d	f. machine	6d. remote control	جهاز التحكم
7. radio b	g. point	7b. radio alarm	منبه الراديو
8. cash g	h. oven	8g. cash point	آلة صرف النقود
9. photo c	i. mouse	9c. photo booth	كشك التصوير



D.p31/ Match the phrases and complete the sentences. Add a comma (,) where necessary.

اربط العبارات لتكوين جمل ، اضع فاصلة عند الضرورة

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. If he drinks coffee at night, b | a. stop the car. |
| 2. My mother gets worried g | b. he doesn't sleep. |
| 3. If I use a hairdryer, i | c. if they don't get water. |
| 4. Plants die c | d. if you eat too many sweets. |
| 5. Do some research on the Internet h | e. if you go out in a boat? |
| 6. Can you get a good signal on your mobile e | f. if you have a problem? |
| 7. If the water in the engine boils, a | g. if I don't phone her. |
| 8. If the battery runs down, j | h. if you have time. |
| 9. You get bad teeth d | i. my hair looks nicer. |
| 10. Who do you talk to f | j. you can recharge it. |

E.p31/ Complete the sentences with the imperative form of the verbs from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية بأستخدام الصيغة الامرية للأفعال التي بين الاقواس

not add / not be / have / pass / not tell / turn

- fun at the party tonight. **Have**
- the eggs until you have mixed it well. **Don't add**
- Please me the pepper. **pass**
- me what to do. **Don't tell**
- Please off your phones during the exam. **turn**
- late or you'll miss the train. **Don't be**

F.p31/ Ibrahim is going to take care of Basim's flat while he is away. Basim is giving him some instructions. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets to form zero conditionals.

سيُعطي إبراهيم بشقة باسم أثناء غيابه ، باسم يُعطيه بعض التعليمات ، اكمل الجمل بالشكل الصحيح للفعل بين قوسين لتكوين جملة شرطية صفرية

- If you (not water) these plants every day, they don't grow. **don't water**
- If you (leave) the rubbish out too early, the neighbours complain. **leave**
- If you press this button for three seconds, the TV (turn) on. **turns**
- If the car (not start), you need to wait a few seconds and try again. **doesn't start**
- If you read the email I sent you, all the information (be) there. **is**
- If the cat (not eat) in the morning, it gets very angry! **doesn't eat**



U2: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 22 - 23 (E-learning) التعلم الإلكتروني

الماضي المستمر والماضي البسيط Past continuous and past simple

1. نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان يحدث في وقت معين من الماضي.

2. قاعدة الماضي المستمر هي:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

(I / He / She / It) + **was** + فعل + **ing**

(We / You / They) + **were** + فعل + **ing**

حالة النفي Negative

(I / He / She / It) + **was not** + فعل + **ing**

(We / You / They) + **were not** + فعل + **ing**

حالة الاستفهام Question

Was + (I / he / she / it) + فعل + **ing** + **?**

Were + (we / you / they) + فعل + **ing** + **?**

3. ملاحظات املانية حول اضافة (ing).

- نحذف حرف (e) من نهاية الكلمة عند اضافة (ing) مثل: **have ; having / make ; making**
- نكرر الحرف الصحيح الاخير اذا جاء قبله حرف علة واحد ثم نضيف (ing) مثل: **swim ; swimming / get ; getting**
- نقب الحرفين (ie) في نهاية الكلمة الى الحرف (y) ثم نضيف (ing) مثل: **tie ; tying / lie ; lying / die ; dying**
- الفعل الذي لا تنطبق عليه الملاحظات السابقة نضيف له (ing) دون اي تغيير مثل: **look ; looking / clean ; cleaning**

Ex1: She **was listening** to music.

Ex2: I **was cleaning** the room.

Ex3: They **were playing** volleyball.

Ex4: He **was not going** to the cinema.

Ex5: We **were not walking** in the park.

Ex6: When **was Ali painting** the house?

Ex7: What **were you doing** at eight o'clock last night?

Ex8: What **was he doing** at 10 p.m last night?

4. نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث او موقف وقع في الماضي وانتهى.

5. هنالك علامات تدل على الماضي البسيط مثل: **yesterday / last / ago / past / 1998**

6. ملاحظات املانية حول اضافة (ed).

- اذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط مثل: **change ; changed / move ; moved / love ; loved**
- في بعض الافعال ، اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف صحيح وقبله حرف علة نضاعف الحرف الاخير ونضيف (ed) مثل: **stop ; stopped**
- اذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف صحيح ، يقلب ال (y) الى (i) ونضيف (ed) مثل: **study ; studied / cry ; cried**
- اذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) وقبله حرف علة ، لا يقلب ال (y) بل يبقى كما هو ونضيف (ed) مثل: **play ; played**
- الفعل الذي لا تنطبق عليه الملاحظات السابقة نضيف له (ed) دون تغيير مثل: **work ; worked / look ; looked**



7. قاعدة الماضي البسيط هي:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative
تكملة + فعل ماضي بسيط + فاعل
حالة النفي Negative
تكملة + فعل مجرد + **did not** + فاعل
حالة الاستفهام Question
? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + فاعل + **Did**

Ex9: Rami **visited** his friend yesterday. (Affirmative)Ex10: Rami **did not visit** his friend yesterday. (Negative)Ex11: **Did** Rami **visit** his friend yesterday? (Question)

8. افعال الكينونة الماضية (**was / were**) اذا لم يتبعها (فعل مستمر) تعتبر ماضي بسيط وكذلك فعل التملك الماضي (**had**) اذا لم يتبعه (تصريف ثالث) يعتبر ماضي بسيط مثل:

Ex12: He **was** at the office.- He **was not** at the office.- **Was** he at the office?Ex13: Suha **had** a laptop.- Suha **didn't have** a laptop.- **Did** Suha **have** a laptop?9. عندما يأتي الماضي المستمر والماضي البسيط في جملة واحدة عندها تجد احد ادوات الربط التالية: (**while / as / when / and**).

10. يكون الحدث الاطول (ماضي مستمر) ويكون الحدث الاقصر (ماضي بسيط).

11. (**and / when**) وغالباً يأتي بعدهم ماضي بسيط (الحدث الاقصر) ، وتكون الجملة الاخرى ماضي مستمر (الحدث الاطول).12. (**while / as**) وتعني (بينما) وغالباً يأتي بعدهم ماضي مستمر (الحدث الاطول) ، وتكون الجملة الاخرى ماضي بسيط (الحدث الاقصر).

13. ملخص الملاحظات السابقة في القاعدة التالية:

قاعدة when , and
ing + فعل + (**was / were**) + فاعل , تكملة + فعل ماضي بسيط + فاعل + **When**
تكملة + فعل ماضي بسيط + فاعل + (**when / and**) + **ing** + فعل + (**was / were**) + فاعل

قاعدة while , as
تكملة + فعل ماضي بسيط + فاعل , **ing** + فعل + (**was / were**) + فاعل + (**While / As**)
ing + فعل + (**was / were**) + فاعل + (**while / as**) + تكملة + فعل ماضي بسيط + فاعل

Ex14: While we **were sitting** at the café, somebody **stole** my bag.Ex15: I **was having** a shower when the phone **rang**.Ex16: How fast **was he driving** when the accident **happened**?Ex17: They **were playing** football when they **heard** a scream.Ex18: I **made** coffee for everyone while you **were talking** to Jamal.

Ex19: While Ali (have) a shower, somebody (knock) at the front door. (Correct)

- While Ali **was having** a shower, somebody **knocked** at the front door.

Ex20: He (fall) over as he (come) down the stairs. (Put the verbs in the correct form)

- He **fell** over as he **was coming** down the stairs.

Ex21: When I met her at the airport, Muna (wear) a long blue dress. (Correct the verb)

- When I met her at the airport, Muna **was wearing** a long blue dress.

Ex22: She cut her hand she was chopping vegetables. (**while** / when)

Ex23: How fast (he / drive) when the accident (happen)? (Correct the verb)

- How fast **was he driving** when the accident **happened**?

14. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (Yes / No) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **Yes**
not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **No**

Ex24: Was she late yesterday? (Yes / No)

- **Yes, she was.**

- **No, she wasn't.**

Ex25: Did he play tennis last Friday? (Yes / No)

- **Yes, he did.**

- **No, he didn't.**

Ex26: Were they going to the museum? (Yes / No)

- **Yes, they were.**

- **No, they weren't.**

Lesson 3 (AB) P. 32 - 33

A.p32/ Match the words and phrases with their definitions.

طابق الكلمات والعبارات التالية مع تعريفها

1. text message رسالة نصية	b	a. not being able to communicate with the online world
2. social media post منشور على وسائل التواصل	e	b. a written communication sent by mobile phone
3. email إيميل	f	c. a document on the internet with its own address
4. webpage صفحة على الانترنت	c	d. a divide between people who have internet access and people who don't
5. digital poverty الفقر الرقمي	a	e. a short type of content published on a social media platform
6. digital gap الفجوة الرقمية	d	f. a way of transmitting messages electronically



B.p32/ Complete the summary of what happened to Rashid with the words and phrases from the box.

أكمل ملخص ما حدث لراشد من الكلمات والعبارات الموجودة في الصندوق

and / because of بسبب / Eventually أخيراً / First الأول / In my opinion في رأيي
Some time later بعد فترة من الوقت / That's how هكذا / then ثم ، بعدها / when عندما / While بينما

Rashid was having online lessons **because of** the pandemic, **when** his parents got him a new laptop to study with. He didn't know what to do with his old one **and** decided to look online. **While** he was online, he read an article about digital poverty. **That's how** he found out that lots of people couldn't study because they didn't have computers or internet access. So he decided to do something. **First**, he created a webpage for his organization, We Are Connected. He **then** sent a message to all his friends and family asking for help. **Some time later**, he got an email from a man who fixes computers. **Eventually**, his organization grew and he even received a prize from the mayor. **In my opinion**, this story shows that anyone can make a difference to other people's lives if they want to.

C.p33/ Work in pairs. Write each sentence with one verb in the past simple and one verb in the past continuous.

اكتب كل جملة من الجمل التالية بفعل بزمان الماضي البسيط وفعل بزمان الماضي المستمر

- What (you / do), when (I / call) you?
- What **were you doing**, when I **called** you?
- (They / wait) for the bus, when (they / see) an accident.
- They **were waiting** for the bus, when they **saw** an accident.
- (I / write) an important email, when (the computer / break down).
- I **was writing** an important email, when the computer **broke down**.
- While (she / speak) on the phone, (somebody / knock) on the door.
- While she **was speaking** on the phone, somebody **knocked** on the door.

U2: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 24 (Hold on, please) انتظر من فضلك

Lesson 4 (AB) P. 34 - 35

B.p34-35/ Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.

ضع الكلمات التالية بالترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. back / know / when / you / be / he'll
DO?
- Do you know when he'll be back? | d. you / hear / nice / to / from
Hello Mina,!
- Hello Mina, nice to hear from you! |
| b. calling / I / who's / ask
May?
- May I ask who's calling? | e. take / I / message / a
Can?
- Can I take a message? |
| c. he's / the moment / out / afraid / at
I'm
- I'm afraid he's out at the moment. | f. to / Tuqa / speak / like / to
I'd , please.
- I'd like to speak to Tuqa, please. |



U2: Lesson 5 (SB) P. 25 (We had such a good time) حظينا بوقت جيد حقا

So and such أدوات التعجب

1. نستخدم (so / such) لأظهار التعجب ولأعطاء الصفات قيمة اكبر مما هي عليه اي اننا نقوم بتعظيم الصفة.

2. قاعدة (so).

so + (ظرف / صفة)

Ex1: The beach was **so crowded**. (adj.) صفة

Ex2: This homework is **so difficult**. (adj.) صفة

Ex3: He's always **so kind** and friendly. (adj.) صفة

Ex4: She works **so fast**. (adv.) ظرف

Ex5: He was driving **so dangerously**. (adv.) ظرف

3. قاعدة (such).

such + (a / an) + صفة + اسم

Ex6: It's **such a lovely day**.

Ex7: It was **such an exciting film**.

Ex8: I had **such strange dreams last night**.

4. يمكن استخدام (so / such) مع او بدون (that).

Ex9: He was so angry **that** he couldn't speak.

Ex10: He was so angry he couldn't speak.

Ex11: It was such a boring film **that** we walked out of the cinema.

Ex12: It was such a boring film we walked out of the cinema.

5. يمكن استخدام (so / such) للتعبير عن التعجب!

Ex13: She's **so good at painting**!

Ex14: She draws **so well**.

Ex15: She's **such a good artist**.

Ex16: They're **such beautiful paintings**.

6. يمكن استخدام (so / such) للتعبير عن السبب و النتيجة باستخدام (that).

Ex17: The bed was **so hard that** I couldn't sleep.

Ex18: It was **such a hard bed that** I couldn't sleep.

Ex19: The weather was **so bad that** we decided to stay at home.

Ex20: She worked **so fast that** she finished in an hour.

Ex21: They had **such a good time** they didn't want to leave.



6. أمثلة إضافية:

Ex22: It was a windy day. We decided not to go out. (Join: such) **اربط الجملتين**- It was **such a windy day that** we decided not to go out.Ex23: He woke up late yesterday. He missed the first lesson. (Join: so) **اربط الجملتين**- He woke up **so late yesterday that** he missed the first lesson.Ex24: They were difficult questions. We couldn't answer them. (Join: such) **اربط الجملتين**- They were **such difficult questions that** we couldn't answer them.

Ex25: It was such (a / an) hard bed that I couldn't sleep.

Ex26: It was such (a / an) exciting film.Ex27: This homework is (so / such) difficult.Ex28: They're such beautiful paintings. (a / an / x)

Lesson 5 (AB) P. 36 - 37

A.p36/ Match the phrases and write full sentences.

اربط العبارات واكتب الجمل كاملة

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. He was so angry c | a. we couldn't go out. |
| 2. I was in such a rush e | b. I couldn't hear what she said. |
| 3. It was raining so hard a | c. that he slammed the door. |
| 4. It was such a lovely day f | d. that we couldn't have a conversation. |
| 5. Her voice was so quiet b | e. that I forgot my purse. |
| 6. The homework was so difficult g | f. that we went to the beach. |
| 7. The place was so noisy d | g. that I gave up doing it. |

B.p36/ Study the examples and write four more sentences with phrases from the box.

ادرس الامثلة التالية واكتب اربع جمل اضافية باستخدام العبارات التي في الصندوق

played so badly **حقاً** / لعب بصورة سيئة **حقاً** / spoke so quietly **جداً** / تحدث بصوت منخفض **جداً**
 walked so slowly **جداً** / مشى بصورة بطيئة **جداً** / worked so hard **جداً** / عمل بجد **جداً**

Example. He **ran so fast** that nobody could catch him.Example. She **wrote so fast** she finished the letter in five minutes.

1. Our team **played so badly** that we lost the tournament.
2. He **spoke so quietly** that the teacher got angry.
3. My little brother **walked so slowly** we arrived late for the film.
4. I **worked so hard** that I passed the exam with 80%.



D.p37/ Complete the conversation with the words and phrases from the box.

اكمل المحادثة التالية بأستخدام الكلمات والعبارات التي في الصندوق

so crowded that / so hot / such / such a long way / that

Noor: Would you like to go for a walk to the shops?

Katie: Not really. I don't feel like it. It's so hot today.

Noor: We can walk to Abu Nuwas Park. It's nice and cool there.

Katie: But that's such a long way to walk.

Noor: Don't be so lazy! You'll like it when we get there. It's so lovely and shady under the trees.

Katie: Oh, Noor, why don't we go tomorrow?

Noor: No, tomorrow's Friday and it'll be really crowded.

Katie: How do you know?

Noor: I went there last Friday with Latifa and it was so crowded that we couldn't get a seat in the shade.

Katie: You're exaggerating a bit, aren't you?

Noor: No, really. There were such long queues at the drinks stalls that we nearly died of thirst.

Katie: OK. Let's go. But let's go for a drink and an ice cream first to give us energy.

Noor: Honestly, Katie, it's just a walk to the park, not a trip across the Sahara!

Katie: I know. But I really feel like an ice cream.

Noor: OK. We can have one at the Oasis Café.

Katie: That's a really good idea. Let's go in ten minutes.



U2: Lesson 6 (SB) P. 26 - 27 (The Internet) الانترنت

Unit

2

Lesson 6
AB 38-39

The internet

- 1 Quickly skim the texts. Make a list of five different uses of the internet mentioned on these pages.
- 2 Scan the texts to find four negative aspects of the internet.

INVENTIONS THAT HAVE CHANGED THE WORLD

What do you do if you want to know about a high school volleyball team in Beirut? Who can your brother ask if he wants to find a language school in Scotland where he can study English this summer? Where can your sister get the latest information if she has to write an essay about climate change? And what should you all do if you want to know about a festival? The answer is simple. You go onto the internet and look for a useful **website**.

The internet – sometimes called the world wide web (www) – is a huge international network of computers. It was invented in 1990 by two computer scientists – Tim Berners-Lee from Britain and Robert Cailliau from Belgium. At the time, they were both working at a physics laboratory in Switzerland. They invented the system to help scientists to share ideas and information. In 1993, the internet became public and it grew very fast. Today, it is used by billions of people all over the world and its use is still growing.

To **go online**, all you need is a computer and an internet router or Wi-Fi. And if you look at the statistics, all teenagers in the United States are connecting regularly. A recent survey showed that 97% of teenagers use the internet at least daily, and 46% say they use it 'almost constantly'. They often go online on their phones, through a **browser** or via **apps**. Most of these also say that they frequently go online to play games (72%) and listen to music. Most American teens (51%) prefer to **stream** music these days, rather than **download** it (20%).

Another very popular online activity among teens is social media. Social media platforms like YouTube (95%) and TikTok (67%) are among the most popular with teens, while others like Facebook (32%) are now less used by teens. Teenagers often use social media to **chat**, post photos or exchange **memes**. They also **follow** their favourite celebrities and **influencers** to find out what they're doing.

Useful words

website – a set of pages on the internet about a particular topic; these pages often contain colour pictures, sound and video

go online – connect to the internet

browser – a computer program you use to open webpages (e.g., Chrome, Edge)

apps – a software that you download on your phone

stream – to play sound or video on a computer or smartphone directly from the internet

download – copy information or programs from the internet onto your computer

chat – to exchange messages with another person online

memes – funny images, videos or texts that are shared online quickly

follow – to choose to see someone's posts on social media

influencers – people who receive money to show products on social media



I usually go online on my phone, but I've also got a laptop and I use it a lot for my schoolwork. Whenever I need to find out some facts, I do an online search. I needed information about sharks for a school project the other day. I found lots of useful articles and pictures online. I printed the pictures and used them in my project. It was quicker than going to the library and looking at lots of different books.

Claudia Flight - United Kingdom



I use the internet for homework, to send emails and to stream music. I love going to the cinema, so I also use it to find out what's on and read film reviews. The only trouble with using the internet is that you sit in the same place for a long time. Also, if I look at a computer screen for too long, my eyes sometimes hurt. That's why I prefer to go to the cinema than watch a film online.

Sa'eed Khoury - Lebanon



The internet is very useful, but you have to be careful if you don't want to waste time. Sometimes you are looking for one small piece of information and you end up spending hours online. For example, yesterday I wanted to find out something about the Nile River. I looked at 17 different sites and it took me two hours.

Zeinab Hashim - Iraq



My business is buying and selling stamps. I do 70% of my business through the internet. I sell stamps to people in Malaysia, Japan, Europe and the Middle East. Sometimes I think it's a bit lonely. If you do business in a shop, you see people and life is more interesting. With the internet, you don't meet your customers. I also use the internet for shopping. I buy plane tickets and train tickets online. I always get my theatre and concert tickets online, too. I also buy books, computer programs, CDs and DVDs. It's cheaper and quicker and you don't need to go to lots of different shops looking for what you want.

Mike Allen - Australia



The Internet الانترنت

قطعة الوحدة الثانية 1

1. Who invented the internet and where? من اخترع الإنترنت وأين
- Two computer scientists named Tim Berners-Lee and Robert Cailliau invented the internet when they were working in Switzerland. اخترع عالما الحاسوب تيم بيرنرز لي وروبرت كايو الإنترنت عندما كانا يعملان في سويسرا.
2. Who used the internet at first? من استخدم الإنترنت أولاً
- At first, it was used by scientists to share information. أول من استخدمه العلماء لمشاركة المعلومات.
3. What do American teenagers mostly use the internet for, according to the article?
ما الغرض الرئيسي من استخدام المراهقين الأمريكيين للإنترنت ، وفقاً للمقالة
- American teenagers mostly use the internet to play games, listen to music and use social media. يستخدم المراهقون الأمريكيون الإنترنت غالباً للعب الألعاب والاستماع إلى الموسيقى واستخدام وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
4. What are the most popular social media platforms with teens?
ما هي أشهر منصات التواصل الاجتماعي بين المراهقين
- Nowadays, YouTube and TikTok are among the most popular social media platforms with teens. يُعد يوتيوب وتيك توك حالياً من بين أشهر منصات التواصل الاجتماعي بين المراهقين.
5. What do teenagers usually use social media for?
ما الغرض الرئيسي لاستخدام المراهقين وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
- Teenagers usually use social media to chat, post photos or exchange memes. They also follow their favourite celebrities and influencers. يستخدم المراهقون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي للدردشة ونشر الصور وتبادل الفكاهات. كما يتابعون المشاهير والمؤثرين المفضلين لديهم.
6. **Website**: a set of pages on the internet about a particular topic; these pages often contain colour pictures, sound and video.
الموقع الإلكتروني: مجموعة من الصفحات على الإنترنت تتناول موضوعاً معيناً ، وغالباً تحتوي على صور ملونة ومقاطع صوتية وفيديو.
7. **Go online**: connect to the internet. **الاتصال بالشبكة**: هو الاتصال بالإنترنت.
8. **Browser**: a computer programme you use to open webpages (e.g., Chrome, Edge).
المتصفح: برنامج حاسوبي تستخدمه لفتح صفحات الويب (مثل كروم وإيدج).
9. **Apps**: softwares that you download on your phone. **التطبيقات**: برامج تُنزلها على هاتفك.
10. **Stream**: to play sound or video on a computer or smartphone directly from the internet.
البث: هو تشغيل الصوت أو الفيديو على جهاز كمبيوتر أو هاتف ذكي مباشرة من الإنترنت.
11. **Download**: copy information or programs from the internet onto your computer.
التنزيل: هو سحب المعلومات أو البرامج من الإنترنت إلى جهاز الكمبيوتر.
12. **Chat**: to exchange messages with another person online. **الدردشة**: تبادل الرسائل مع شخص آخر عبر الإنترنت.
13. **Memes**: funny images, videos or texts that are shared online quickly.
الميمز: صور أو مقاطع فيديو أو نصوص مضحكة تُشارك بسرعة عبر الإنترنت.
14. **Follow**: to choose to see someone's posts on social media.
المتابعة: لاختيار مشاهدة منشورات شخص ما على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
15. **Influencers**: people who receive money to show products on social media.
المؤثرون: أشخاص يتلقون المال لعرض المنتجات على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.



Lesson 6 (AB) P. 38 - 39

A.p38/ Find words in the texts on pages 26-27 of the Student's Book to match the definitions below.
جد كلمات في النص الموجود في كتاب الطالب ص 26-27 تطابق التعاريف التالية

Example. newest, most recent = **latest** الاحدث

1. successful record = **popular** عمل ناجح ، شائع ، رائج ، واسع الانتشار

2. very big = **huge** ضخم

3. exchange; give and take = **share** يشارك

4. open to everyone; opposite of private = **public** عام

5. information shown in numbers = **statistics** احصائيات

تمرين (B) ص 38. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

HW.p39/ Write 100-150 words about how to use the internet wisely.

اكتب انشاء مكون من حوالي 100 الى 150 كلمة عن كيفية استخدام الانترنت بحكمة
(انشاء الوحدة الثانية)

The Internet الانترنت

The Internet is useful if we use it wisely. We can learn, watch helpful videos, and talk to friends. But we must be careful. Never share personal information with strangers.

Visit safe websites only. Don't believe everything you read, some things are false. Take breaks and don't stay online too long. Use the Internet for school, reading, and learning new things.

If something makes you feel scared or confused, talk to a parent or teacher. Always use the Internet in a smart way.

الانترنت مفيد إذا استخدمناه بحكمة. يمكننا أن نتعلم ، ونشاهد الفيديوهات المفيدة ، ونتحدث مع الأصدقاء. لكن علينا أن نكون حذرين. لا تشارك معلوماتك الشخصية مع الغرباء.

زر المواقع الآمنة فقط. لا تصدق كل ما تقرأه ، فبعضه غير صحيح. خذ فترات راحة ولا تبقَ على الإنترنت وقتاً طويلاً. استخدم الإنترنت للدراسة ، والقراءة ، وتعلم أشياء جديدة.

إذا شعرت بالخوف أو الحيرة من شيء ما ، تحدث مع والديك أو معلمك. استخدم الإنترنت دائماً بطريقة ذكية.

U2: Lesson 7 (SB) P. 28 (They must have forgotten) لابد انهم قد نسوا



الاستنتاجات Making deductions

• نستخدم القاعدة التالية لعمل الاستنتاجات عن الماضي:

(the verb in the third form for the p.p) + (must have / might have / can't have)

1. نستخدم (must have) عندما نكون متأكدين من وقوع الفعل او الحدث.

Ex1: Everything is fresh and green outside. It **must have rained** in the night.

2. نستخدم (might have) عندما نكون غير متأكدين من وقوع الفعل او الحدث.

Ex2: 'Where's my jacket?'

'I don't know for sure, but I think your brother might have it.' (take / took / **taken**)

3. نستخدم (can't have) عندما نكون متأكدين من عدم وقوع الفعل او الحدث.

Ex3: My jacket is too small for him. He have borrowed it. (must / might / **can't**)

4. أمثلة إضافية:

Ex4: Someone phoned while you were out. I'm not sure, it (be) someone from your office.

(Make deduction) **اعمل استنتاج**

- Someone phoned while you were out. It **might have been** someone from your office.

Ex5: Somebody has stolen my necklace. The door is locked, so I'm sure the thief (come) through the window. (Make deduction)

- Somebody has stolen my necklace. The door is locked, so the thief **must have come** through the window.

Ex6: 'I saw all the tourist attractions when I went to America.' You were there only for a week. I'm sure you haven't seen everything.' (Make deduction)

- 'I saw all the tourist attractions when I went to America.' You were there only for a week, you **can't have seen** everything.

Lesson 7 (AB) P. 40 - 41

B.p40/ Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.

اختر الاختيار الصحيح لتكمل الجمل التالية

1. 'And there I was, face to face with a bear!'
'Really?! That **must** / **can't** have been very scary!'
2. 'You don't know for sure that it was Alex who ate your sandwich.'
'That's true. It **must** / **might** have been somebody else. But I still think it was him.'
3. 'I saw Ellie in town today. I called her, but she ignored me.'
'It **must** / **can't** have been her. She's in Italy on holiday, remember?'
4. I tried calling Rashid and he didn't pick up.'
'He **might** / **can't** have been in the shower. Try again now.'
5. 'Wow! This decoration looks great!'
'It does! But Samira **must** / **can't** have done all this on her own. I'm sure she had help!'
6. 'Have you seen Noura?'
'Well, her bag's not here, so she **can't** / **must** have gone home already.'



C.p41/ Complete the sentences with the past participle of the underlined verbs.

اكمل الجمل التالية بكتابة التصريف الثالث للأفعال التي تحتها خط

Example. I'm sure she was sad when her grandmother died.

- She must have sad when her grandmother died. **been**

1. This essay is very long. I'm sure you took days to write it.

- You must have days to write it. **taken**

2. He hasn't called me. Perhaps he lost my number.

- He might have my number. **lost**

3. Their car is here. I'm sure they didn't go out.

- They can't have out. **gone**

D.p41/ Complete the sentences with *must have*, *might have* or *can't have* and the past participles of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل التالية مستخدماً *must have*, *might have*, *can't have* بالإضافة الى التصريف الثالث للأفعال بين الأقواس

1. Someone phoned and asked for you while you were out. I'm not sure who it was, but it (be) someone from your office. **might have been**

2. Somebody has stolen my pearls. The front door is still locked, so the thief (come) through the open window. **must have come**

3. I saw all the tourist attractions when I went to America.

You (see) everything. You were only there for a week. **can't have seen**

4. Where's my letter from Janet?

I'm not sure, but I (throw) it away by mistake. **might have thrown**

5. Someone tried to deliver a package this morning. It (be) for you because I am not expecting anything. **must have been**

6. I lost my credit card this morning. I (drop) it while I was walking the dog. **might have dropped**

7. I don't know where my notebook is. I (leave) it in the office because I remember putting it in my bag. **can't have left**

8. Where is James?

I haven't seen him today, he (go) to visit his family. **must/might have gone**



U2: Lesson 8 (SB) P. 29 (An ancient culture) ثقافة قديمة

Lesson 8 (AB) P. 42 - 43

A.p42/ Find words in the texts on page 29 of the Student's Book with the following meanings.

جد كلمات في النصوص الموجودة ص 29 في كتاب الطالب تطابق المعاني التالية

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. jewellery (n) مجوهرات | valuable objects like rings and necklaces |
| 2. suddenly (adv) فجأة | that happened quickly and surprisingly |
| 3. bones (n) عظام | hard parts that form the skeleton of a person or animal |
| 4. equipment (n) مُعدات | objects that are necessary for an activity |
| 5. pearls (n) لؤلؤ | small round white balls that are very valuable and used to make jewels |
| 6. stadiums (n) ملاعب | large buildings where people do sports |

C.p43/ Complete the sentences about a tribe with *must have*, *might have* or *can't have* and the past participle.اكمل الجمل التالية عن القبيلة مستخدماً *must have*, *might have*, *can't have* بالإضافة الى التصريف الثالث

- We're positive that the Hulareen tribe had a system of writing.
The Hulareen tribe a system of writing. **must have had**
- We're not sure, but we think they knew the basics of maths.
They the basics of maths. **might have known**
- We're sure they didn't stay for long in one place.
They for long in one place. **can't have stayed**
- Maybe they spoke more than one language.
They more than one language. **might have spoken**
- It's clear that life wasn't easy for them.
Life easy for them. **can't have been**
- Based on the food available, it's clear they ate mostly meat.
Based on the food available, they mostly meat. **must have eaten**

U2: Lesson 9 (SB) P. 30 (Buy, buy!) لاطلاع

Lesson 9 (AB) P. 44 - 45 لاطلاع

U2: Round up (SB) P. 31 لاطلاع



Revision (AB) P. 46 - 47

A.p46/ All the vowels are missing in the words below. Read the clues and write the complete words.
كل احرف العلة مفقودة في الكلمات التالية ، اقرأ الدلائل واكتب الكلمات كاملة

Making machines work تجعل الآلات تعمل

- | | | |
|---------|--|----------------------|
| 1. PSTN | Which ... should the switch be in: up or down? | position مكان ، موقع |
| 2. PLG | You have to ... in the machine to make it work. | plug يشبك |
| 3. PRSS | ... the red button and the lift will come. | press يضغط |
| 4. SLCT | Another word for choose. | select يختار |
| 5. TRN | Please ... the air conditioning on. It is too hot in here. | turn يشغل ، يدور |
| 6. FX | Another word for repair. | fix تصلح ، يصلح |

Adjectives صفات

- | | | |
|-----------|--|---------------------|
| 7. PPLR | That a lot of people like or do. | popular شائع ، رائج |
| 8. LNLV | You feel ... if you spend too much time alone. | lonely وحيد ، وحدة |
| 9. SFL | A dictionary is very ... when you are learning a language. | useful مفيد |
| 10. WRNG | The opposite of correct. | wrong خاطئ |
| 11. CRWDD | Full of people. | crowded مزدحم |
| 12. FT | Healthy. | fit صحي |

Internet الانترنت

- | | | |
|-----------|--|-----------------------|
| 13. STRM | To play sound or video directly from the internet. | stream بث |
| 14. DWNLD | To copy information from the Internet onto a computer. | download تنزيل |
| 15. NLN | When you connect to the Internet, you go ... | online متصل بالانترنت |
| 16. MM | A funny image or text that is shared online quickly. | meme الميمز ، فكاهة |
| 17. WBST | A set of pages about a particular topic on the Internet. | website موقع الكتروني |
| 18. FLLW | To choose to see someone's posts on your social media. | follow متابعة |



B.p46-47/ Write the missing letter at the beginning and the end of each word. The clues will help you.

اكتب الاحرف المفقودة في بداية ونهاية كل كلمة ، الدلائل سوف تساعدك

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Could you ... on a minute? I'll see if she is in. | hold ينتظر |
| 2. I didn't break my leg when I fell over yesterday, but I ... it. | hurt يؤذي |
| 3. When someone dies in the water because they can't swim, they ... | drown يغرق |
| 4. Don't ... about me. I will be all right. | worry يقلق |
| 5. When a water shortage is due to ... consumption, it means people have used more water than was necessary. | wasteful يضيع ، مهدر |
| 6. Another word for wait. 'Don't ..., do it today.' | delay يؤجل ، يؤخر |
| 7. When you want someone to be quick, you tell them to ... up. | hurry يسرع |
| 8. 'What did Edison invent?' 'The electric ... bulb and a lot of other things.' | light ضوء |
| 9. These cakes ... nuts. They have nuts in them. | contain يحتوي |
| 10. There were so many cars on the road. The ... was terrible. | traffic حركة المرور |
| 11. You can send a ... message using a mobile phone. | text نص |
| 12. Have you read the ... about sharks in today's blog? | post منشور ، بريد |

Test (AB) P. 48 - 51

B.p48/ Match the words to make compound nouns.

طابق الكلمات لتكوين اسماء مركبة

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| 1. text e | a. card | 1e. text message | رسالة نصية |
| 2. hair c | b. club | 2c. hair dryer | مجفف شعر |
| 3. web f | c. dryer | 3f. web site | موقع الكتروني |
| 4. sports b | d. guard | 4b. sports club | نادي رياضي |
| 5. coast d | e. message | 5d. coast guard | حرس الشاطئ |
| 6. post a | f. site | 6a. post card | بطاقة بريدية |

C.p48/ Write each sentence with one verb in the past simple and one verb in the past continuous.

اكتب كل جملة بحيث يكون فعل بزمان الماضي البسيط والفعل الآخر بزمان الماضي المستمر

- How fast (you / drive) when (you / hit) the tree?
- How fast **were you driving** when **you hit** the tree?
- Where (the little girl / play) when (the wave / pull) her into the water?
- Where **was the little girl playing** when **the wave pulled** her into the water?
- (They / stand) at the bus stop when (they / see) a strange bird.
- **They were standing** at the bus stop when **they saw** a strange bird.
- (Somebody / take) my wallet while (I / not look).
- **Somebody took** my wallet while **I was not looking**.



D.p49/ Match the phrases and write sentences in the zero conditional.

اربط العبارات التالية واكتب الجمل مستخدماً الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. the machine only (work) e | a. please (not answer) it |
| 2. she (not sleep) very well b | b. she (drink) coffee at night |
| 3. the phone (ring) a | c. she always (shout) it out |
| 4. she (know) the answer c | d. nothing (happen) |
| 5. you (press) the button d | e. you (plug) it in |
| 6. we (lose) a mark. f | f. we (make) a spelling mistake |

- 1e. The machine only **works** if you **plug** it in.
- 2b. She **doesn't sleep** very well if she **drinks** coffee at night.
- 3a. If the phone **rings**, please **don't answer** it.
- 4c. If she **knows** the answer, she always **shouts** it out.
- 5d. If you **press** the button, nothing **happens**.
- 6f. We **lose** a mark if we **make** a spelling mistake.

E.p49/ Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences. Then join them with *so / such ... that*.

طابق بدايات ونهايات الجمل التالية ، بعدها اربط الجمل بأستخدام *so / such ... that*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. The test was easy b | a. we decided to eat somewhere else. |
| 2. It was a windy day f | b. everyone got 100%. |
| 3. She has a lot of problems. e | c. we couldn't answer them. |
| 4. It was an expensive restaurant. a | d. he missed the first lesson. |
| 5. He woke up late. d | e. she doesn't know what to do. |
| 6. They were difficult questions. c | f. we decided not to go out in the boat. |

- 1b. The test was **so** easy **that** everyone got 100%.
- 2f. It was **such** a windy day **that** we decided not to go out in the boat.
- 3e. She has **such** a lot of problems **that** she doesn't know what to do.
- 4a. It was **such** an expensive restaurant **that** we decided to eat somewhere else.
- 5d. He woke up **so** late **that** he missed the first lesson.
- 6c. They were **such** difficult questions **that** we couldn't answer them.



(AB) P. 50 (Mobile Phones) الهواتف النقالة

MOBILE PHONES

The first mobile phone was used by the Swedish police in 1946. It wasn't anything like today's mobile phones. It was only 'mobile' because it wasn't plugged in. It didn't even have its own battery. It used the car battery. After six calls, the car battery was flat. _____¹

The first public mobile phone network, called ARP (AutoRadioPuhelin, or Car Radio Phone in English), came much later. It was made in Finland in 1978. The different parts of the equipment necessary to operate it were very heavy and big. _____²

_____³ They are also everywhere: there are more than 15 billion mobile phones in use in the world. That means that there are nearly twice as many mobile phones on the planet than people! One reason the use of mobiles is rising so sharply is that they are becoming popular in China, India and Russia. These three countries have very big populations. In China there are now over 1.6 billion users – about 20% of the total number of users on the planet. India also has over a billion users and is the second largest phone market, while Russia has over 250 million users.

_____⁴ After the earthquake in Afghanistan in October 2023, hundreds of people were found and rescued because of their mobile phones. Rescue workers were able to trace them even when the people did not know where they were. Families could get in touch with loved ones using mobile phones when landlines were no longer working.

_____⁵ For example, it can be very annoying when someone's mobile phone rings in a film, a concert or even an exam because the owner has forgotten to turn it off. But there are much more serious problems. A lot of car accidents have been caused by drivers talking on their mobiles. In most countries, it is now illegal to use a mobile while driving a car unless it is 'hands-free' (that means that you don't hold the mobile in your hand). But many people think that even hands-free mobile phones are dangerous in cars. They say that drivers don't think about the road and the traffic if they are talking on a mobile. They say it is different from talking to another person in a car. Another person in the car can see the traffic problems and will stop talking when the driver is in difficulty. But someone on the phone can't see the driver's situation.

Love them or hate them, mobile phones are here to stay. _____⁶ You can use them to record videos, take photos, go on your social media and stream music and video. They are completely different from the Swedish police mobiles of 1946!



Mobile Phones الهواتف النقالة

قطعة الوحدة الثانية 2

1. Where was the first mobile phone used and when? أين تم استخدام أول هاتف نقال ومتى?
- It was used in Sweden in 1946. تم استخدامه في السويد عام 1946.
2. Why wasn't the mobile phone very useful? لماذا لم يكن الهاتف النقال مفيداً جداً?
- Because it used the car battery and after six calls, the battery was flat.
لأنه استخدم بطارية السيارة وبعد ست مكالمات كانت البطارية فارغة
3. Which country has the most mobiles - China, India or Russia?
أي دولة لديها أكبر عدد من الهواتف المحمولة - الصين أم الهند أم روسيا
- China. الصين
4. Which country has the fewest mobiles - China, India or Russia?
أي دولة لديها أقل عدد من الهواتف المحمولة - الصين أم الهند أم روسيا
- Russia. روسيا
5. Why were mobiles especially useful after the earthquake in Afghanistan? Give two reasons.
لماذا كانت الهواتف المحمولة مفيدة خصوصاً بعد حدوث الهزة الأرضية في أفغانستان ، أعط سببين
- Because rescue workers were able to trace people who had mobile phones, and because people were able to get in touch with their loved ones even after landlines stopped working.
لأن عمال الإنقاذ كانوا قادرين على تتبع الأشخاص الذين لديهم هواتف محمولة ، ولأن الناس تمكنوا من الاتصال بأحبائهم حتى بعدما توقفت الخطوط الأرضية عن العمل
6. Why is it dangerous to use even a hands-free mobile when driving? Explain in your own words.
لماذا يعتبر استخدام الهاتف النقال أمراً خطيراً أثناء القيادة حتى لو لم تستخدم اليدين ، وضح ذلك بكلماتك الخاصة
- Because they prevent the driver from concentrating on driving the car.
لأن الهواتف تمنع السائق من التركيز في قيادة السيارة

H.p51/ Complete the sentences with words from the box.

أكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام الكلمات في الصندوق

crowded مزدحم / hurry يسرع / hurt يؤذي / rough عنيف / surf يتصفح / waste يهدر ، يضيع ، يفسد

1. The sea was so that we couldn't go swimming. rough
2. The restaurant was so that we couldn't get a table. crowded
3. If you the Internet, you can find all kinds of information. surf
4. Don't time watching reality shows on TV. waste
5. Did you yourself when you fell over? hurt
6. If you don't up, we'll miss the plane. hurry

تمرين (G) ص 51. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

نهاية الوحدة الثانية

بالطبع ستتعب ، لو كان النجاح سهلاً لوصل اليه الجميع



UNIT THREE / الوحدة الثالثة

U3: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 34 (Endangered animals) الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض

ترتيب الصفات Adjective order

- عند وجود صفتين او اكثر في نفس الجملة ، نضع الصفات العامة اولاً وبعدها نضع صفات اللون وحسب القاعدة التالية:

الاسم + صفة اللون + الصفة العامة

1. الصفة العامة مثل (جميل beautiful / مشهور famous / سيء bad / جيد good / رخيص cheap / قديم old / جديد new).
 2. صفات اللون مثل (ازرق blue / اسود black / ابيض white / اصفر yellow / احمر red / بني brown).
 3. الاسماء مثل (ساعة watch / فستان dress / حصان horse / باب door / سيارة car / قطّة cat).
- Ex1: A (long green / green long) snake.
- Ex2: A (red small / small red) insect.
- Ex3: We've bought a (new black / black new) car.
- Ex4: She was riding a (white beautiful / beautiful white) horse.
- Ex5: Look at the water. (blue calm / calm blue)
4. لايجوز وضع (and) بين الصفة العامة و صفة اللون ، بينما عند وجود صفتين لون في الجملة نضع (and) بينهم.

Ex6: Look at that pretty blue and yellow scarf.

Ex7: A beautiful black and yellow bird.

Ex8: A strange pink and grey animal.

Ex9: We've bought a new and red black car. (Correct) صح الجملة

- We've bought a new red and black car.

Ex10: She was wearing a (red / and / beautiful / white) jacket. (Reorder) اعد ترتيب الجملة

- She was wearing a beautiful red and white jacket.

Ex11: Look at that (and / nice / shirt / yellow / brown). (Reorder)

- Look at that nice yellow and brown shirt.



Lesson 1 (AB) P. 52 - 53

A.p52/ Use words from each box to make six phrases. You can use two colours if you want.

استخدم الكلمات من كل صندوق لكتابة ست عبارات ، تستطيع استخدام لونين لو اردت ذلك

a / an / my / the / your

big / dangerous / expensive / funny / nice
old / pretty / small / strangeblack / blue / green / grey / pink / purple
red / white / yellowbus / car / carpet / cat / eyes / fish
shirt / shoes

Example. an old black and white bus.

1. a nice green shirt.
2. an old red carpet.
3. the pretty black shoes.
4. my funny grey and white cat.
5. your small yellow fish.
6. an expensive pink car.

C.p53/ Rewrite the sentences with the adjectives in brackets in the correct order.

اعد كتابة الجمل التالية مع وضع الصفات التي بين الاقواس بالترتيب الصحيح

1. There's a film at the cinema tonight. Shall we go to see it after dinner? (action / new)
- There's a **new action film** at the cinema tonight. Shall we go to see it after dinner?
2. I'm going out to dinner tonight. I bought a dress for the occasion. (beautiful / black / long)
- I'm going out to dinner tonight. I bought a **beautiful, long black dress** for the occasion.
3. My grandmother loves to collect plates. (Chinese / old / beautiful)
- My grandmother loves to collect **beautiful, old, Chinese plates**.
4. She's a lovely girl with hair. (black / curly / long)
- She's a lovely girl with **long, curly black hair**.
5. Be careful! There is a dog in the woods. (black / scary / big)
- Be careful! There is a **scary, big, black dog** in the woods.
6. My sister bought a car. (sports / American / new)
- My sister bought a **new, American sports car**.
7. There are bags by the hotel main entrance. (paper / three / small)
- There are **three small paper bags** by the hotel main entrance.
8. I bought a beautiful table at the antique fair. (old / round / wooden)
- I bought a beautiful **old, round, wooden table** at the antique fair.



U3: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 35 (Almost extinct) على وشك الانقراض

Almost extinct

Unit

3

Lesson 2
AB 54-55

- 1 Read the questions in Exercise A on page 54 of the Activity Book. Read the fact files and find the answers as quickly as you can.

NORTH ATLANTIC RIGHT WHALE



Two hundred years ago, the Americans called it the 'right' whale because it was the right whale to hunt. It is slow and easy to catch, and it has lots of oil in its body. Hunters killed almost all of them. Today, there are only about 350 in the North Atlantic. Hunting has stopped, but the population is not increasing. One reason may be pollution in the sea. Another reason may be the impact caused by commercial shipping and fishing. If we do not want the right whale to become extinct, we must protect their habitat.

GIANT PANDA



Pandas eat bamboo – sometimes 30 kilos per day of it! This means they can only live in places with lots of bamboo. So these beautiful animals need help: if we want pandas to be able to move to other places, we must stop destroying their habitat. And the bad news is – people *are* destroying their habitat. There are less than 2,000 wild pandas today. Zoos have about 650 and are trying to breed them.

BLACK RHINO



Black rhinos were hunted heavily between 1960 and 1995 because of their horns. These are used in traditional medicine. As a result, 98% of the rhinos were killed. Since then, however, their numbers have slowly grown, but they are still hunted and endangered. In fact, one of the types of black rhino, the Western black rhino, became extinct in 2011. Three more types still exist, and there are now around 5,630 rhinos in the wild. Most of these are in four countries: Kenya, Namibia, South Africa and Zimbabwe. If we want to make sure black rhinos survive, we need to provide them with a secure habitat.

HAWKBILL TURTLE



The hawksbill turtle gets its name from its mouth, which looks like the beak of a hawk. It is very difficult to know exactly how many of these turtles there are in the wild because they travel a lot, but experts believe that there are around 20,000–23,000. In the last 30 years, the population fell by 80%, for several reasons. First, their habitat, the coral reefs, is disappearing because of global warming. Secondly, turtles are often caught in fishing nets. Finally, plastic pollution is also a problem for them: they often eat plastic and die. If we stop throwing litter in the sea, we can prevent turtles and other fish from dying.



على وشك الانقراض Almost extinct

قطعة الوحدة الثالثة 1

1. Which animal became extinct in 2011? ما هو الحيوان الذي انقرض عام 2011 ميلادي
- **The Western black rhino.** وحيد القرن الأسود الغربي
2. Which animal eats bamboo? ما هو الحيوان الذي يأكل الخيزران
- **The giant panda.** الباندا العملاق
3. Which animal gets its name from its mouth? ما هو الحيوان الذي سمي بأسمه نسبةً إلى فمه
- **The hawksbill turtle.** سلحفاة منقار الصقر
4. Which animal is used in medicine? ما هو الحيوان الذي يُستخدم في الطب
- **The black rhino.** وحيد القرن الأسود
5. Which animal is there less than four hundred of? ما هو الحيوان الذي يوجد منه أقل من أربعمائة
- **The North Atlantic right whale.** الحوت الشمال الأطلسي الصائب
6. Which animal is there the most of? ما هو الحيوان الذي يوجد منه أكبر عدد
- **The hawksbill turtle.** سلحفاة منقار الصقر

Look / Look like

1. معنى (look) يبدو ، ومعنى (look like) يبدو مثل.

2. يأتي بعد (look) صفة ، ويأتي بعد (look like) اسم وحسب القاعدة التالية:

صفة + (look / looks)
اسم + (look like / looks like)

3. نستخدم (looks / looks like) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد أو أحد الضمائر (he / she / it) ، ونستخدم (look / look like) إذا كان الفاعل جمع أو أحد الضمائر (I / we / you / they).

Ex1: That car (looks / looks like) very old.Ex2: Your eyes (look / look like) stars.Ex3: The teacher (look / looks) very angry.Ex4: Your brother (look like / looks like) a businessman.Ex5: Those flowers nice. (look / looks / look like / looks like)

Lesson 2 (AB) P. 54 - 55

تمارين (A) ص 54. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

C.p54/ Complete the sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام (يجب must) او (لا يجب mustn't)

1. We protect the panda's habitat. **must**
2. We pollute the oceans with plastic that kills the turtles. **mustn't**
3. Hunters kill rhinos for their horns. **mustn't**
4. People do their best to support conservation organizations that protect black rhinos. **must**
5. We find a way to increase right whale numbers. **must**
6. We try to have more pandas in zoos. **must**
7. Commercial fishing disturb the right whales' habitat. **mustn't**
8. We provide these animals with a secure environment. **must**
9. We throw our litter in the sea. **mustn't**
10. Fishermen be careful when they use fishing nets, as they can kill animals that get stuck in them. **must**

E.p55/ Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الكلمات والعبارات التي في الصندوق

look / look like / looks / looks like

1. My cat a tiger. **looks like**
2. Fuad very tired today. **looks**
3. People say that I my father. **look like**
4. Those elephants ill. Why are they lying down? **look**

HW.p55/ Write a description of an animal.

اكتب انشاء عن الباندا العملاق

(انشاء الوحدة الثالثة) 1

The Giant Panda الباندا العملاق

The Giant Panda is a large, black-and-white bear that lives in China. It has a round face, big black eyes, and soft fur.

Pandas love to eat bamboo and spend many hours chewing it. They are gentle animals and live alone in the forest.

Pandas are good at climbing trees. Because there are not many pandas left, people work hard to protect them and keep them safe.

الباندا العملاقة هي دب كبير ذو لونين: أسود وأبيض ، وتعيش في الصين. لها وجه دائري ، وعيون سوداء كبيرة ، وفراء ناعم.

تحب الباندا أكل الخيزران ، وتقضي ساعات طويلة في مضغه. هي حيوانات لطيفة وتعيش وحدها في الغابة.

الباندا جيدة في تسلق الأشجار. وبما أن عدد الباندا قليل جداً ، يعمل الناس بجد لحمايتها والحفاظ عليها.




U3: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 36 - 37 (Making a difference) صنع الفارق

A

The Dugong Team

We are an organization who is trying to save the sweet dugong from extinction and urgently need your help.

Did you know that dugongs only eat seagrass? Unfortunately, seagrass is disappearing because of pesticides in the water. Lack of food and hunting are the two main threats to the dugong. They should live up to 70 years, but if they don't have enough food, they will die way before that.




How can you help?
You can give money once [here](#), or you can adopt a dugong. It works like this: you choose a dugong from our [gallery](#) and pay a monthly fee to help take care of it and keep it safe. If you adopt a dugong, you will get a lovely dugong toy at home and every month you will get updates about your dugong.

B

We Need Water

We Need Water works hard to keep rivers, lakes and oceans clean, and makes sure people have access to drinking water. We work with governments and local communities on projects that make sure there is clean water nearby so people don't have to risk their lives drinking dirty water.



Water is essential to every human being, but there are still around two billion people on the planet that do not have safe access to drinking water.

Some have to walk very long distances for water that may carry diseases.

We Need Water is doing something about this problem. If you donate money to us, we will use it to build wells in small villages and take drinking water to those who really need it. With clean water, people live longer and healthier lives, and children can go to school to build their future.

Make a donation today!
[Give once](#)
[Give monthly](#)
 Select donation amount: £10 £20 £50 £100
 Other: _____

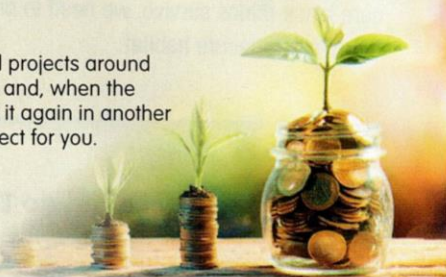
C

GREENMONEY

GreenMoney takes your money and invests it in environmental projects around the world. You can choose from a number of different projects and, when the project is finished, you get your money back, or you can invest it again in another project. If you decide to reinvest, we will suggest the ideal project for you.

Start investing in the planet today!

Which project would you like to help? ▼
 How much can you invest? ▼
 When do you need your money back? ▼

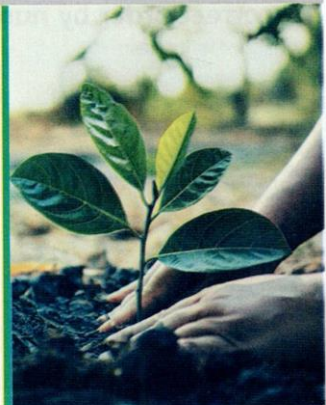


D

Work For Nature

We at Work for Nature don't want your money, we need your time to make a better world. You can volunteer as much time as you can, from just a couple of hours a week (the more the better, of course!). What will you do in that time? We have a number of 'green tasks' to choose from according to your skills. You can do work in your community by, for example, planting trees or visiting schools. If you have skills or training, we will find a suitable job for you. You can also help promote our organization online – so you can help us without even leaving your house!

In your holidays, you can join one of our many preservation projects around the world. In our one- to three-month programmes, you will help protect animals by preserving their habitats.




Making a difference صنع الفارق

قطعة الوحدة الثالثة 2

1. There is not enough food for dugongs because of pollution. (True / False)

لا يوجد طعام كافٍ لحيوان عروس البحر بسبب التلوث

2. With The Dugong Team, you can take a dugong home as a pet. (True / False)

مع منظمة (فريق عروس البحر) ، يمكنك تربية عروس البحر في المنزل كحيوان أليف

3. Many people have to travel to get water, and it's dirty. (True / False)

يضطر الكثير من الناس للسفر للحصول على الماء ، وهو ملوث

4. You have to give money to We Need Water every month. (True / False)

عليك التبرع شهرياً لمنظمة (نحتاج إلى الماء)

5. With GreenMoney, you can receive the money you spent back. (True / False)

مع منظمة (المال الأخضر) ، يمكنك استرداد الأموال التي أنفقتها

6. With GreenMoney, you decide where your money goes. (True / False)

مع منظمة (المال الأخضر) ، أنت من يقرر أين تذهب أموالك

7. Work for Nature only wants you to work a few hours a week. (True / False)

تريد منظمة (العمل من أجل الطبيعة) منك العمل لبضع ساعات فقط أسبوعياً

8. You can also travel to other countries with Work for Nature. (True / False)

يمكنك أيضاً السفر إلى دول أخرى مع منظمة (العمل من أجل الطبيعة)

الحالة الشرطية الأولى "if" First conditional

1. هذا النوع من الجمل الشرطية يعبر عن احتمال حصول الحدث في الوقت الحالي أو المستقبل حيث تكون جملة (فعل الشرط) بزمان (المضارع البسيط Present simple) وجملة (جواب الشرط) بزمان (المستقبل البسيط Future simple) وحسب القاعدة التالية:

فعل مجرد + will + فاعل , تكملة + (s + فعل / فعل مجرد) + فاعل + If
تكملة + (s + فعل / فعل مجرد) + فاعل + If + فعل مجرد + will + فاعل

- Ex1: If Noor (go) to the shop, I won't have to go tomorrow. (1st conditional) استخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- If Noor goes to the shop, I won't have to go tomorrow.

- Ex2: If they (go) to the shop, I won't have to go tomorrow. (1st conditional) استخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- If Noor go to the shop, I won't have to go tomorrow.

- Ex3: If Noor (not / go) to the shop, I will have to go tomorrow. (1st conditional)

- If Noor doesn't go to the shop, I will have to go tomorrow.

- Ex4: If you (not / go) to the shop, I will have to go tomorrow. (1st conditional)

- If you don't go to the shop, I will have to go tomorrow.

- Ex5: If you apply for a job, you probably (get) it. (1st conditional) استخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- If you apply for a job, you probably will get it.



Ex6: If I don't pass the high school this year, I (take) it again next year. (Correct) **صح الجملة**
 - If I don't pass the high school this year, I **will take** it again next year.

Ex7: If she (not pass) the high school this year, she'll take it again next year. (Correct)
 - If she **doesn't pass** the high school this year, she'll take it again next year.

Ex8: If you (not / stop) that, I'm going to get angry. (1st conditional) **استخدم الحالة الشرطية الاولى**
 - If you **don't stop** that, I'm going to get angry.

Ex9: If I open a student account, I (would / **will**) have to maintain a minimum balance.

Ex10: If anyone (need) advice, I (be) here tomorrow to help. (Put the verbs in the correct forms)
 - If anyone **needs** advice, I **will be** here tomorrow to help.

Ex11: Which course (Muna apply) if she passes the exams? (Put the verb in the correct form)
 - Which course **will Muna apply** if she passes the exams?

Ex12: If my plane (not leave) on time, I'll miss my connections this afternoon. (Correct)
 - If my plane **doesn't leave** on time, I'll miss my connections this afternoon.

Ex13: If she (not apply) for a scholarship, of course she won't get one. (Correct)
 - If she **doesn't apply** for a scholarship, of course she won't get one.

Ex14: If I have any currency left over after that trip, I (keep) it for my second trip.
 (Put the verb in the correct form)
 - If I have any currency left over after that trip, I **will keep** it for my second trip.

Ex15: If she (be) late, we will go without her. (Put the verb in the correct form)
 - If she **is** late, we will go without her.

Ex16: If they (be) late, we'll go without them. (1st conditional) **استخدم الحالة الشرطية الاولى**
 - If they **are** late, we'll go without them.

Ex17: If I (be) late, they'll go without me. (Put the verb in the correct form)
 - If I **am** late, they'll go without me.

2. من الممكن استخدام (unless) بمعنى (إذا لم) بدل الاداة (if) مع مراعاة ان الجملة بعد (unless) يجب ان تكون في حالة الاثبات ، اي مضارع بسيط مثبت لأن (unless) متضمنة معنى النفي ، اي انها تساوي جملة (if) المنفية.

Ex18: I won't help you if you don't help me. (Use: unless)
 - I won't help you **unless you help** me.

Ex19: If you don't practise every day, you won't get better. (Unless)
 - **Unless you practise** every day, you won't get better.

Ex20: If he doesn't practise every day, he won't get better. (Unless)
 - **Unless he practises** every day, he won't get better.

Ex21: If she **doesn't study** hard, she will fail this year. (Use: unless)
 - **Unless she studies** hard, she will fail this year.

Ex22: Unless he makes a big effort this term, he (not get through) the end-of-year exams. (Correct)
 - Unless he makes a big effort this term, he **won't get through** the end-of-year exams.



3. في (الحالة الشرطية الاولى) اذا وجدنا (have) في جملة (فعل الشرط) نحولها الى (has) اذا سُبقت بأسم مفرد او الضمانر (he / she / it) او تبقى (have) كما هي اذا سُبقت بأسم جمع او الضمانر (I / we / you / they) اما اذا وجدنا (have) في جملة (جواب الشرط) تصبح (will have).

Ex23: If she (have) enough money, she will buy a new dress. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If she **has** enough money, she will buy a new dress.

Ex24: If the weather improves, we (have) a picnic. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If the weather improves, we **will have** a picnic.

Lesson 3 (AB) P. 56 - 57

تمرين (A) ص56. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

B.p56/ Find a word in the texts on pages 36-37 of the Student's Book that means:

جد كلمات من النص الموجود في كتاب الطالب ص36-37 والتي تعني التالي

1. when an animal stops existing = **extinction** انقراض
2. chemical products that kill insects = **pesticides** مبيدات حشرية
3. dangers to something or someone = **threats** مخاطر ، تهديدات
4. very important = **essential** اساسي ، جدا مهم
5. holes in the ground from which people get water = **wells** آبار
6. an amount of money you give for a purpose = **donation** تبرع
7. to spend money to try to make more money = **invest** استثمار
8. to offer to do something for free = **volunteer** يتطوع

D.p57/ Join the phrases to make first conditional sentences.

اربط العبارات التالية لتكوين جمل في الحالة الشرطية الاولى

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. If I fail the exam, d | a. Aziz won't wait for us. |
| 2. If you don't take drinks with you, c | b. I'll give you a place in the team. |
| 3. If I become captain, b | c. you will get very thirsty. |
| 4. If the car breaks down, e | d. I will be really disappointed. |
| 5. If you don't enjoy this book, f | e. Waleed won't know how to fix it. |
| 6. If we are late, a | f. bring it back, and I'll lend you another. |

E.p57/ Choose the correct verb to complete the sentences.

اختر الفعل الصحيح لتكمل الجمل التالية

1. Many animals (become / **will become**) extinct if we don't protect their habitat.
2. If I (**don't study** / won't study) hard, I won't pass my exams.
3. The dog (runs away / **will run away**) if you open the door.
4. If we (will arrive / **arrive**) late, they won't let us in.
5. It's too hot. If you don't water the flowers, they (**will die** / die) soon.
6. They (don't ride / **won't ride**) their bikes if it doesn't stop raining.



U3: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 38 (Fuad's phone) هاتف فؤاد

Lesson 4 (AB) P. 58 - 59

HW.p59/ Write a paragraph of 70-100 words about life without a mobile phone.

اكتب انشاء عن الحياة بدون الهواتف النقالة

(انشاء الوحدة الثالثة) 2

Life without a mobile phone الحياة بدون الهواتف النقالة

Life without a mobile phone can be very different. People will talk more face to face and spend more time outside.

There will be no texting or calling, so we will write letters or visit friends. We may feel bored sometimes, but we will have more time for books, games, and family.

Life may be slower, but it can also be more peaceful and simple without a phone in our hands.

الحياة بدون هاتف محمول يمكن أن تكون مختلفة جداً. سيتحدث الناس مع بعضهم وجهاً لوجه أكثر ويقضون وقتاً أطول في الخارج. لن يكون هناك رسائل أو مكالمات ، لذلك سنكتب رسائل أو نزرور الأصدقاء. قد نشعر بالملل أحياناً ، لكن سيكون لدينا وقت أكثر للكتب ، والألعاب ، والعائلة.

قد تكون الحياة أبطأ ، لكنها يمكن أن تكون أكثر هدوءاً وبساطة بدون هاتف في أيدينا.

U3: Lesson 5 (SB) P. 39 (Now you too can be green!)

يمكنك انت ايضا ان تكون محب للبيئة

البادئة re

• نستخدم البادئة (re) قبل الكثير من الأفعال وتعني فعل شيء ما (مرة ثانية) وحسب القاعدة التالية:

الفاعل + re

Ex1: You can **recycle** parts of the mobile phone.

Ex2: I failed the exam, so I will have to **retake** it next year.

Ex3: We **reheated** the pizza in the microwave, but it wasn't very nice.

cycle يدور → **recycle** إعادة تدوير

charge يشحن → **recharge** إعادة شحن

write يكتب → **rewrite** يعيد كتابة

use يستخدم → **reuse** إعادة استخدام

organize ينظم → **reorganize** يعيد تنظيم

do يفعل → **redo** إعادة فعل

play يلعب ، يشغل → **replay** إعادة تشغيل

take يأخذ → **retake** إعادة اخذ



Lesson 5 (AB) P. 60 - 61

A.p60/ Complete the sentences with words from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق

bigger أكبر / cheap رخيص / destroying يحطم ، يدمر / environment بيئة / metal الحديد ، المعدن
process عملية / thousands الآف / throw يرمي / work يعمل

Why we should recycle / by Professor Khaled Al Jaber

People ask, 'Why should we recycle things?' They say that recycling makes a lot of extra **work** - we have to take our rubbish to different bins. And things like paper and glass are **cheap**, so what's the problem?

Well, I say to those people: there are two good reasons why we should recycle paper, glass, **metal** - and perhaps other things, too. The first reason is this: the rubbish dumps near our towns and cities are getting **bigger** every year. These dumps are dirty and dangerous. We are **destroying** the beauty of our country.

The second is an economic reason: let's take paper as an example. To make paper, they cut down trees in Norway or Canada, a very long way away. They make the paper, and then they carry it **thousands** of miles to us - that uses a lot of oil. We use the paper once, and then we **throw** it away. Instead, we should use the old paper to make new paper; it is a cheap and easy **process**. If we do this, we will save money and protect the **environment**.

C.p60/ Match the sentences.

اربط الجمل التالية

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Each team got two goals in the semi-final. d | a. They don't reuse them. |
| 2. I can't read your handwriting. e | b. You should reorganize it. |
| 3. In hospitals, doctors throw away their gloves. a | c. You probably need to recharge the battery. |
| 4. My mobile phone is dead. c | d. They had to replay the game. |
| 5. The town was completely destroyed. g | e. Can you rewrite the address more carefully? |
| 6. Your office is a mess! b | f. Let's redo the question from the start. |
| 7. $x = 4y^2 - 0.01$? That can't be right! f | g. They are starting to rebuild it now. |

D.p61/ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs from the box and the prefix re-.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل مع البادئة re

charge يشحن / cycle يدور / heat يُسخن / organize ينظم / take يأخذ / write يكتب

- 'Sorry, I have to go. My phone battery's really low.'
'But I still have something to say to you. Why don't you it a little and call me again?' **recharge**
- 'Wow, your bedroom's even messier than usual!'
'I know. I'm my wardrobe. That's why there are clothes everywhere.' **reorganizing**
- 'This is not your best essay.'
'I know, I'm sorry. I got it wrong first and then had to it at the last moment.' **rewrite**
- 'I didn't pass my driving test.'
'That happens. I my driving test three times before I finally passed.' **retook**
- 'What are we having for lunch?'
'There's not much in the fridge, so I'm yesterday's dinner!' **reheating**
- 'Don't throw those batteries in the bin.' - 'Don't worry, I won't. I'm going to the supermarket later and there's a place to them there!' **recycle**



U3: Lesson 6 (SB) P. 40 - 41 (The environment - What are the effects of oil and gas pollution?) البيئة - ماهي تأثيرات التلوث النفطي والغازي

التحدث عن المستقبل Talking about the future

• هنالك عدة طرق للتحدث عن المستقبل منها:

أولاً: التحدث عن المستقبل باستخدام (سوف will).

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + will + فاعل

حالة النفي Negative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + (will not / won't) + فاعل

حالة الاستفهام Question

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + فاعل + will

1. مختصر (will) هو (ll) ومختصر (will not) هو (won't).

Ex1: They **will** call. **الاثبات**

Ex2: They **won't** call. **النفي**

Ex3: **Will** they call? **الاستفهام**

2. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (Yes / No) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **Yes**

not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , **No**

Ex4: Will she come? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, she will.**

- **No, she won't.**

Ex5: Will you play football? (Yes/No)

- **Yes, I will.**

- **No, I won't.**

3. نستخدم (will / won't) للتحدث عن التنبؤ للمستقبل ، الوعود ، التهديدات ، العروض ، القرارات.

Ex6: It'll be hot tomorrow. (prediction) **تنبؤ**

Ex7: We'll help you with the party food. (promise) **وعد**

Ex8: You'll be sorry about this. (threat) **تهديد**

Ex9: I'll carry that for you. (offer) **عرض**

Ex10: Right. We'll catch the ten o'clock bus. (decision) **قرار**



4. نستخدم (will / won't) بعد الافعال التالية (يتوقع expect / يأمل hope / يعرف know / يعتقد think).

Ex11: He **thinks** the plane will be late.

Ex12: She **knows** the train will leave at 11 a.m.

Ex13: I **hope** you'll enjoy the film.

Ex14: I **expect** she'll be home soon.

ثانياً: التحدث عن المستقبل باستخدام (سوف going to).

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + is (He / She / It)

تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + am (I)

تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + are (You / We / They)

حالة النفي Negative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + is not (He / She / It)

تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + am not (I)

تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + are not (You / We / They)

حالة الاستفهام Question

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + is (he / she / it)

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + am (I)

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + going to + are (you / we / they)

1. مختصر (is) هو (s) ومختصر (am) هو (m) ومختصر (are) هو (re).

2. مختصر (is not) هو (isn't) ومختصر (are not) هو (aren't).

Ex15: I'm going to make a cake. / I'm not going to make a cake. / Am I going to make a cake?

Ex16: She's going to help us. / She isn't going to help us. / Is she going to help us?

Ex17: They're going to get married. / They aren't going to get married. / Are they going to get married?

3. عند الجواب عن السؤال بـ (Yes / No) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , Yes

not + فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل , No

Ex18: Is he going to go to the museum? (Yes/No)

- Yes, he is.

- No, he isn't.

Ex19: Are you going to make the dinner? (Yes/No)

- Yes, I am.

- No, I'm not.

Ex20: Are they going to play tennis? (Yes/No)

- Yes, they are.

- No, they aren't.



4. نستخدم (going to) للتحدث عن النيات.

Ex21: This watch doesn't work. I know. **I'm going to buy** a new one.

Ex22: **We're going to collect** George at the airport later.

5. نستخدم (going to) عندما نستطيع رؤية ما الذي سوف يحصل (رؤية قريبة للمستقبل).

Ex23: Dave is standing by the pool. **He's going to dive** in.

Ex24: The sky is full of clouds. **It's going to rain**.

ثالثاً: التحدث عن المستقبل باستخدام الأفعال الناقصة (may , might ربما).

1. نستخدم (may / might) للتحدث عن احتمالية حصول الشيء وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + فعل مجرد + (may / might) + فاعل

Ex25: I'm not sure but **we may be** late tomorrow.

Ex26: I'm not sure but **we might be** late tomorrow.

Ex27: If I have time, **I may visit** them.

Ex28: **We may see** Salwa if we go to Amman.

2. (may / might) لهما نفس المعنى وهو من الممكن في المستقبل ، ولكن (might) أكثر شيوعاً من (may).

Ex29: 'Are Rob and Halim going to come round?'

'I'm not sure. They **might** or they **might not**.'

رابعاً: التحدث عن المستقبل باستخدام ظروف التأكيد (Adverbs of certainty).

1. نستخدم ظروف التأكيد للتعبير عن مدى تأكيدنا من شيء ما.

2. الظرفان (حتماً definitely / بالتأكيد certainly) يحملان نفس المعنى ، وكلاهما نستخدمهما عندما نكون متأكدين بنسبة 100%.

3. الظرف (على الأرجح probably) يُستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين بنسبة 75%.

4. الظرف (من الممكن possibly) يُستخدم عندما نكون متأكدين بنسبة 50% ، لذلك غالباً نستخدم (possibly) مع (might).

5. تأتي هذه الظروف غالباً قبل الفعل الرئيسي في الجملة.

Ex30: He **definitely** left the house this morning.

6. عندما يكون الفعل الرئيسي في الجملة (to be) اي (is / am / are / was / were) عندها تأتي ظروف التأكيد بعدهم.

Ex31: She is **probably** in the room.

Ex32: He is **certainly** a keeper.

7. وفي حالة وجود فعل مساعد (auxiliary verb) وفعل آخر في الجملة ، فإن ظرف التأكيد يكون بينهما.

Ex33: He is **certainly** sleeping late.

Ex34: She'll **definitely** be home by now.

Ex35: He will **probably** remember tomorrow.

Ex36: She might **possibly** know the answer.

8. في بعض الحالات قد يأتي ظرف التأكيد في بداية الجملة.

Ex37: **Certainly**, I will be there.



خامساً: التحدث عن المستقبل باستخدام الافعال (يتوقع expect / يأمل hope).
1. يمكن ان يأتي بعد هذه الافعال فعل مجرد.

Ex38: I **hope to see** you at the meeting.

Ex39: I **expect to be** there by eight.

2. يمكن ان يأتي بعد هذه الافعال عبارة.

Ex40: I **hope that you'll come**.

Ex41: I don't **expect that Layla will remember me**.

3. يمكن ان **نحذف (that)** من الجملة بدون التأثير على المعنى.

Ex42: I **hope you'll come**.

Ex43: I don't **expect Layla will remember me**.

• أمثلة إضافية لكل مواضيع التحدث عن المستقبل:

Ex44: Right. We'll the 10 o'clock bus. (**catch** / chatched / catching)

Ex45: She (has) lunch with her friends tonight. (Future: 'will')

- She **will have** lunch with her friends tonight.

Ex46: Layla's (**going to** / will) have a party in her house next week.

Ex47: Are you going (visit / **to visit**) your uncle soon?

Ex48: I'm not sure but we might late tomorrow. (are / **be** / was)

Ex49: He (left definitely / **definitely left**) the house this morning.

Ex50: She (**might possibly** / possibly might) know the answer.

Ex51: I hope to you at the meeting. (**see** / saw / seen)

Lesson 6 (AB) P. 62 - 63

B.p63/ Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the predictions.

ضع الكلمات التي بين الأقواس بالترتيب الصحيح لتكمل التوقعات أو التنبؤات التالية

- I (improve / don't / things / think / will) much in the next few years.
- I **don't think things will improve** much in the next few years.
- I (monitor / companies / hope / will) the amount of pollution they produce.
- I **hope companies will monitor** the amount of pollution they produce.
- Wildlife (able / be / might / recover / to), but I'm not sure how much.
- Wildlife **might be able to recover**, but I'm not sure how much.
- Burning oil (continue / is / to / likely) for a few more years.
- Burning oil **is likely to continue** for a few more years.
- We (to / going / reduce / are) our use of fossil fuels.
- We **are going to reduce** our use of fossil fuels.
- I (industrial / expect / development / continue / to) to grow, but more responsibly.
- I **expect industrial development to continue** to grow, but more responsibly.



HW.p63/ Write a paragraph of 60-70 words about future changes in your town.

اكتب انشاء عن التغييرات المستقبلية التي ستحصل في مدينتك
(انشاء الوحدة الثالثة) 3

Future changes in my town **التغييرات المستقبلية في مدينتي**

In the future, my town will have many good changes. There will be more schools and hospitals. New roads will make travel easier.

Many trees will be planted to keep the air clean. Shops and parks will open for families. People will use buses and bikes more than cars.

Life will be better and safer. Everyone in the town will be happy with these changes and enjoy a better future.

في المستقبل ، ستشهد مدينتي العديد من التغييرات الجيدة. سيكون هناك المزيد من المدارس والمستشفيات. وستبنى طرق جديدة لتسهيل التنقل.

ستزرع العديد من الأشجار للحفاظ على نقاء الهواء. ستُفتح المتاجر والحدائق للعائلات. وسيستخدم الناس الحافلات والدراجات أكثر من السيارات.

ستكون الحياة أفضل وأكثر أماناً. وسيكون الجميع في البلدة سعداء بهذه التغييرات وسيستمتعون بمستقبل أفضل.

U3: Lesson 7 (SB) P. 42 (Shall I feed the baby lion?) هل اطعم الاسد الصغير

عرض المساعدة **Offering to help**

1. لتقديم عرض نستخدم احد التعابير التالية:

Shall I + فعل مجرد + ؟
Shall we + فعل مجرد + ؟
Would you like me to + فعل مجرد + ؟
Would you like us to + فعل مجرد + ؟

Ex1: Shall I (get / gets / getting) some batteries?

Ex2: Shall we here? (wait / waited / waiting)

Ex3: Would you like me (write / to write) that down?

Ex4: Would you like us to (do / to do) the cooking?

2. للموافقة على العرض (Accepting) نستخدم (Yes, please / Good idea).

3. لرفض العرض (Refusing) نستخدم (No, thanks / I'll do it myself, thanks).

Ex5: Shall I feed the baby lion? (Refuse) ارفض العرض

- No, thanks.

- I'll do it myself, thanks.

Ex6: Shall I work in the car park? (Accept) اقبل العرض

- Yes, please.

- Good idea.

Ex7: Would you like me to help you? (Refuse) ارفض العرض

- No, thanks.

- I'll do it myself, thanks.



Lesson 7 (AB) P. 64 - 65

C.p65/ Your friends are helping you to organize a surprise birthday party for your brother. Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the conversation.

أصدقائك سوف يساعدوك في تنظيم حفلة عيد ميلاد مفاجئة لأخيك. ضع الكلمات بين قوسين بالترتيب الصحيح لإكمال المحادثة.

Anas: (you / to / Would / us / like) bring anything?

- **Would you like us to** bring anything?

Yes, if you could all bring something to eat, that would be great.

Marwa: (mean / Do / sandwiches / you) and things like that?

- **Do you mean sandwiches** and things like that?

Yes, exactly. Just simple stuff.

Noura: (I / bake / Shall) a cake?

- **Shall I bake** a cake?

(very / you / nice / That's / of), but I've already ordered one, thanks.

- **That's very nice of you**, but I've already ordered one, thanks.

Talal: (like / Would / to / you / me) take your brother somewhere on the day so you have more time to prepare everything?

- **Would you like me to** take your brother somewhere on the day so you have more time to prepare everything?

That (a / idea / is / fantastic)!

- That **is a fantastic idea!**



D.p65/ You are not sure about the information below. Add question tags to check.

انت لست متأكد من المعلومات التالية ، اضع اسئلة ذيلية للتأكد

1. You have put the baby lion in its cage, **haven't you?**
2. The table in the picnic area is broken, **isn't it?**
3. The animals can't get into the car park, **can they?**
4. The tourists should stay in their cars, **shouldn't they?**
5. The new no-smoking sign will be OK, **won't it?**
6. The noise of the minibus didn't disturb the elephants, **did it?**
7. You've got the keys of the café, **haven't you?**

U3: Lesson 8 (SB) P. 43 (The best of both worlds) الافضل في العالمين

Lesson 8 (AB) P. 66 - 67

HW.p67/ Write a paragraph about: How can we reduce pollution from cars in cities?

اكتب انشاء عن كيفية تقليل تلوث السيارات في المدن

(انشاء الوحدة الثالثة) 4

How can we reduce pollution from cars in cities?

كيفية تقليل تلوث السيارات في المدن

Road transports especially cars is one of the biggest sources of air pollution in the world. It can cause a variety of human and environmental problems which could be avoided or at least reduced.

One of the solutions is to encourage people to walk or ride bicycles instead of driving a car. An easier solution is to use public transporting.

Travelling on trams, buses and trains is a better way to reach our destination. There are other ways such as: using hybrid cars, driving more gently and maintaining the car.

تعتبر وسائل النقل البري وخاصة السيارات من أكبر مصادر تلوث الهواء في العالم. يمكن أن تسبب مجموعة متنوعة من المشاكل البشرية والبيئية التي يمكن تجنبها أو على الأقل تقليلها.

أحد الحلول هو تشجيع الناس على المشي أو ركوب الدراجات الهوائية بدلاً من قيادة السيارة. يوجد حل اسهل ايضا وهو استخدام وسائل النقل العام.

السفر في الترام ، الحافلات والقطارات هو أفضل وسيلة للوصول إلى وجهتنا. هناك طرق أخرى مثل: استخدام السيارات الهجينة ، والقيادة بلطف أكثر ، وصيانة السيارة.



U3: Lesson 9 (SB) P. 44 (The Arabian Oryx) المها العربي

Unit

3

Lesson 9
AB 68-69

The Arabian oryx

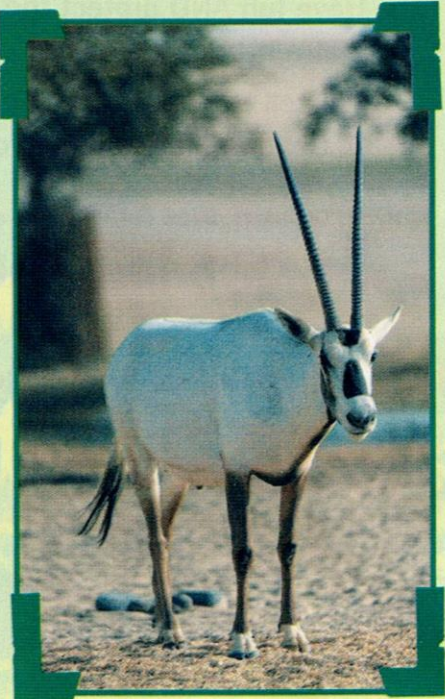
- 1 When did the oryx become extinct in the wild? Find the answer in the article as quickly as you can.

The oryx is back

The oryx is a beautiful antelope with two long horns. It is one of the few big animals that can live in the desert. It gets most of its water from plants; it eats at night when there is some water on the leaves. It walks hundreds of kilometres to find food.

In the 1960s, the population of oryx in the Arabian Peninsula was very small. The animal was endangered because of hunting. It was hunted for two reasons: the local Bedouin people hunted it for meat, and city people hunted it for sport. In the past, when the hunters were on horses, the oryx survived. But hunters in big four-wheel-drive cars were able to follow the oryx everywhere – it could not get away from them. In 1972, the last wild oryx was shot.

But, happily, that was not the end of the story. Zoos around the Middle East had quite a good number of oryx. They got the animals to breed, to build up their numbers. Then, in 1982, they put some oryx back into the wild in Oman. The programme was a success, and in 1990 they did the same thing in Saudi Arabia. Of course, hunting the oryx is no longer allowed. Experts say that today the wild population of these wonderful animals is over 1,000, 6,000–7,000 more in zoos and private collections.



The Arabian Oryx **المها العربي**

قطعة الوحدة الثالثة 3

1. Not many big animals can live in the desert. (**True** / False) أغلب الحيوانات الكبيرة لا تستطيع العيش في الصحراء
2. Oryx usually stay in a small area. (True / **False**) عادة ما يبقى المها في منطقة صغيرة
3. Sixty years ago, there were lots of oryx in the Arabian Peninsula. (True / **False**) قبل أربعين سنة كان عدد حيوانات المها كبيرا في شبه الجزيرة العربية
4. Some people liked eating oryx. (**True** / False) بعض الناس يحبون أكل المها
5. Oryx was hunted by people on horseback. (**True** / False) تم اصطياد المها من قبل الناس على ظهور الخيل
6. Wild oryx disappeared in the 1960s. (True / **False**) اختفى المها البري في الستينيات
7. Oryx didn't breed successfully in zoos. (True / **False**) لم يتكاثر المها بنجاح في حدائق الحيوان
8. Hunting oryx is now against the law. (**True** / False) صيد المها الآن مخالف للقانون

استخدام المختصرات **Using contractions**

- نستخدم الصيغ المختصرة عند **التحدث** أكثر من استخدامها عند **الكتابة** لأن التحدث عادةً يكون أسرع وأقل رسمية من اللغة المكتوبة وحسب الجدول التالي:

Written language اللغة المكتوبة	Spoken language اللغة المتكلمة
It is one of the few big animals ...	It's one of the few big animals ...
... it could not get away.	... it couldn't get away.
... it will probably soon be 1,000.	... it'll probably soon be 1,000.

Lesson 9 (AB) P. 68 - 69

تمرين (A) ص 68. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

B.p56/ Find a word in the texts on page 44 of the Student's Book that means:	جد كلمات من النص الموجود في كتاب الطالب ص 44 والتي تعني التالي
1. hard parts of an animal that grow on its head = horns	قرون
2. that is at risk of disappearing = endangered	مهدد بالانقراض
3. people who hunt animals = hunters	صيادون
4. didn't die = survived	ينجو ، بقي على قيد الحياة
5. have babies = breed	يتكاثر
6. an animal's natural habitat = the wild	البرية ، موطن الحيوانات

U2: Round up (SB) P. 45 لاطلاع



Revision (AB) P. 70 – 71

A.p70/ Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the sentences.

ضع الكلمات التي بين الاقواس بالترتيب الصحيح لتكمل الجمل التالية

- The rhino is (grey / a / animal / large).
- The rhino is **a large grey animal**.
- We won't get there in time (we / leave / if / don't).
- We won't get there in time **if we don't leave**.
- The air quality (better / will / get / definitely) in the next few years.
- The air quality **will definitely get better** in the next few years.
- Ahmed, (me / would / to / like / wash / you) the dishes?
- Ahmed, **would you like me to wash** the dishes?
- Manar bought (metal / a / black / case / new) for her phone.
- Manar bought **a new black metal case** for her phone.
- If I finish studying early, (with / I'll / you / go).
- If I finish studying early, **I'll go with you**.

B.p70/ Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

اختر الاختيار الصحيح لتكمل الجمل التالية

- (I / **I'll** / I'd) give you a ring if I finish early.
- It will (definite / definitive / **definitely**) rain tomorrow, so we can't have the party in the garden.
- There (**aren't** / are'nt / arent') many things to do in our project now.
- (Do / Are / **Would**) you like me to carry your shopping for you?
- We got Rashid a (**nice black leather** / black nice leather / leather nice black) wallet for his birthday.
- How can I help? (Would / **Shall** / Will) I take the rubbish out?

C.p71/ Complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

اكمل المحادثة التالية باستخدام الكلمات التي في الصندوق

global عالمي / I'd اود / if اذا / recycle إعادة تدوير / shall هل / that's هذا / we're نحن / will سوف

Zaid: I'm really worried about the future of the planet. We need to do something about warming and other environmental problems. **global**

Yasir: That's true. we don't do anything, the situation will just get worse. **If**

Zaid: But what can we do? just students. **We're**

Yasir: Maybe, but we can do our part. like to start a Green Club at the school. **I'd**

Zaid: Great idea! Then we can do things like teach people how to correctly and we can also clean up parks in the city. **recycle**

Yasir: True. If we talk to the other classes at school, we get more members. **will**

Zaid: I'm sure the teachers will give us a few minutes of the class. I prepare presentation about it? **Shall**

Yasir: great, thanks. **That's**



D.p71/ Complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

اكمل المحادثة التالية باستخدام الكلمات التي في الصندوق

animals / حيوانات / art / فن / bin / سلة / bus / حافلة / car / سيارة / coffee / قهوة / endangered / مهدد بالانقراض
gallery / معرض / hybrid / هجين / metals / معادن ، حديد / place / مكان / quiet / هادئ / recycling / إعادة تدوير
school / مدرسة / shop / محل / toxic / سامة

- The dugong and the tiger are just two examples of **endangered animals**
- Mobile phones are made of that pollute the water. **toxic metals**
- I'm going to take these glass bottles to the **recycling bin**
- Huda bought a to go to work and travel. **hybrid car**
- This forest used to be a very, but now there's a factory next to it. **quiet place**
- The showed beautiful paintings at their exhibition last weekend. **art gallery**
- The on the high street serves delicious croissants in the morning. **coffee shop**
- The arrived very late this morning and the children missed the first lesson at school. **school bus**

Test (AB) P. 72 - 75

A.p72/ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام الصيغة الصحيحة للافعال التي في الصندوق

breed / يربي / expect / يتوقع / hunt / يصطاد / kill / يقتل / protect / يحمي / rebuild / بناء
recharge / إعادة شحن / recycle / إعادة تدوير / reuse / يعيد استخدام / rewrite / يعيد كتابة

- We must try to the environment around the industrial site. **protect**
- I I will get a job with the oil company. **expect**
- Don't throw those plastic plates away. We can clean them and them. **reuse**
- The hotel was damaged by the tsunami. They had to it. **rebuild**
- I couldn't decide what to tell her. I the letter four times. **rewrote**
- People around here with falcons. It's a traditional sport. **hunt**
- Don't forget to your mobile phone - you'll need it. **recharge**
- Pollution from that factory has most of the fish in the river near here. **killed**
- It's difficult to pandas in zoos. They seem unhappy. **breed**
- It is possible to most of the metal parts in computers. **recycle**

B.p72/ Match Mrs Youssef's sentences with her daughter's replies.

طابق الجمل التالية

Mrs Youssef

Layla

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Almost everything is ready for the party. b | a. Do they really? |
| 2. I spoke to the Maths teacher about your exam result. c | b. What else have we got to do? |
| 3. If the car's not fixed, we'll have to take a taxi. e | c. What did she say? |
| 4. Your father is going to Germany on business. f | d. I think he did. |
| 5. Your cousins want to come and stay for a week. a | e. Do you mean it's broken down? |
| 6. I wonder if Fuad took his sports bag to school. d | f. How long will he be away? |



C.p73/ Match the sentence halves. Then write the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

طابق نصفي الجمل التالية ، وبعدها اكتب الجمل باستخدام الصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال التي بين الأقواس

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. If you (have) any problems, d | a. we'll be able to see the lions. |
| 2. If the zoo (have) any success breeding gorillas, c | b. she will have to retake it. |
| 3. If the panda (become) extinct, e | c. they will be put back into the wild. |
| 4. If you (throw) away your phone, f | d. will you call me? |
| 5. If we (go) to Tanzania, a | e. the Chinese will feel very sad about it. |
| 6. If my sister (fail) this exam, b | f. it will end up on a rubbish dump. |

1d. If you **have** any problems, will you call me?

2c. If the zoo **has** any success breeding gorillas, they will be put back into the wild.

3e. If the panda **becomes** extinct, the Chinese will feel very sad about it.

4f. If you **throw** away your phone, it will end up on a rubbish dump.

5a. If we **go** to Tanzania, we'll be able to see the lions.

6b. If my sister **fails** this exam, she will have to retake it.

D.p73/ Complete the sentences with *will*, *shall* or a cross (X).

اكمل الجمل التالية بـ *will*, *shall*, *X*

- I write down the number for you? **Shall**
- If we stay in a hotel, it cost a lot. **X / will**
- My uncle let you stay at his house if you go to London. **will / X**
- They be there on time - don't worry. **will**
- we lend you our laptop computer to do the job? **Shall**
- If your friends make a lot of noise, your mother get angry. **X / will**
- If we don't do something, the dugong become extinct. **X / will**
- I buy some more bread today? **Shall**
- If you leave now, you get to work early. **X / will**
- If you don't go to bed early tonight, you be tired tomorrow. **will**
- we go for a walk? It's a lovely day today. **Shall**
- The dogs be hungry, if you don't feed them. **will**



F.p75/ Write a paragraph about: How can we save water?

اكتب انشاء عن: كيف نستطيع انقاذ المياه

(انشاء الوحدة الثالثة) 5

Ways of saving water كيفية انقاذ المياه

We can save water in many simple ways. First, we should turn off taps when we brush our teeth. It is better to take showers instead of baths because they use less water.

We can also recycle water to use it for watering gardens and parks. We must think about other people who need water and not waste it.

Saving water is important for everyone. If we all work together, we can keep water safe for the future.

يمكننا توفير الماء بطرق بسيطة كثيرة. أولاً ، يجب أن نغلق الصنابير عند تنظيف أسناننا. كذلك من الأفضل أن نأخذ دوشاً بدلاً من الاستحمام في الحوض لأنه يستهلك ماءً أقل.

يمكننا أيضاً إعادة استخدام الماء لسقي الحدائق والمتنزهات. علينا أن نفكر في الآخرين الذين يحتاجون إلى الماء وألا نضيعه.

توفير الماء مهم للجميع. إذا عملنا معاً ، يمكننا الحفاظ على الماء للمستقبل.

علي يحيى

alieng93

نهاية الوحدة الثالثة

كن عالي الهمة ولا ترضى بغير القمة



UNIT FOUR / الوحدة الرابعة

U4: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 48 (Bakkar's adventures) مغامرات بكار

Unit
4Lesson 1
AB 76-77

Bakkar's adventures

- 1 Read the article quickly and answer the questions in Exercise A, on page 76 of the Activity Book.

HAVE YOU HEARD OF BAKKAR?



Bakkar is a young country boy in Upper Egypt. His father is dead and he lives with his mother. He loves art and drawing, and he cares for animals. He is not a hero, but he is a very kind and sociable child.

You might have watched *Bakkar* cartoons during Ramadan. In Egypt, 40 million Egyptians turn on their TVs to watch him every day of Ramadan. The series is also very **popular** in the United Arab Emirates, Oman and Tunisia. Mona Abu El Nasr, who invented and created Bakkar, explained why people of different ages and classes like watching the series during the month of Ramadan. She said it's because people can recognize Bakkar's Muslim values. She also said that he is a nice change from Western cartoon characters, and he speaks Arabic, even if he has got a **funny** Nubian accent.

The *Bakkar* shows often have **serious** topics. For example, one episode is about sympathy for less **fortunate** people. Habiba, a little blind girl, saves her school friends from danger. Another episode about education shows the importance of teaching everyone in society to

read and write. In a more **recent** show, the main topic is **environmental** problems. Bakkar works with a Red Sea Ranger. They want to rescue **endangered** animals from a **cruel** zookeeper. The cartoon shows children that it's a bad idea to go fishing or collect sea animals in **protected** areas.

Mona Abu El Nasr believed that it's important for the Arab world to have its own cartoon characters. She opened Cairo Cartoon Studios in 1990, and she has been making Egyptian cartoons for TV since then. She started with *Kani Wa Mani*, then made *Sinbad* and finally *Bakkar*.

Perhaps the Bakkar character is so **successful** because it is the most **similar** to Mona Abu El Nasr herself. Bakkar loves art and Mona loved art. 'Art is in my family,' she said. Mona's older sister was a painter, and her uncle was an art teacher. She herself always loved drawing funny characters in **bright** colours in her notebooks at school.

Is there someone in your class who is good at drawing? Perhaps you have a future Mona Abu El Nasr in your class.



Bakkar's adventures مغامرات بكار

قطعة الوحدة الرابعة

- When do Egyptians watch Bakkar cartoons? متى يشاهد المصريون مسلسل رسوم بكار الكرتونية?
- **During Ramadan.** خلال شهر رمضان
- In which other countries are Bakkar cartoons popular? في أي دول أخرى يشتهر المسلسل?
- **In the United Arab Emirates, Oman and Tunisia.** في الإمارات العربية المتحدة ، عُمان ، وتونس
- Who is Habiba? من هي حبيبة
- **She is a little blind girl in one of the episodes who saves her school friends from danger.**
فتاة عمياء صغيرة تظهر في إحدى الحلقات وتنقذ أصدقاء مدرستها من الخطر
- In which area of Egypt does Bakkar save endangered animals?
في أي منطقة من مصر ينقذ بكار الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض
- **Along the Red Sea.** على طول البحر الأحمر
- When did Mona Abu El Nasr start making Egyptian cartoons?
متى بدأت منى أبو النصر في رسم الرسوم الكرتونية المصرية
- **In 1990.** في عام 1990 ميلادي
- What was the title of her first cartoon? ما عنوان أول رسم كاريكاتوري لها
- **Kani Wa Mani.** كاني وماني
- Which person in Mona's family was an art teacher? من هو الشخص في عائلة منى الذي كان معلمًا للرسم
- **Her uncle.** عمها

Lesson 1 (AB) P. 76 - 77

تمرين (A) ص 76. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

B.p76/ Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences. Do not look at the article.

طابق بدايات ونهايات الجمل التالية

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. He is not a hero, but he is a very d | a. environmental problems. |
| 2. Forty million Egyptians watch Bakkar. The series is also very e | b. endangered animals from a cruel zookeeper |
| 3. He speaks Arabic, even if he has got a c | c. funny Nubian accent. |
| 4. The Bakkar shows often have g | d. kind and sociable child. |
| 5. For example, one episode is about sympathy h | e. popular in the United Arab Emirates, Oman and Tunisia. |
| 6. In a more recent show, the main topic is a | f. in protected areas. |
| 7. They want to rescue b | g. serious topics. |
| 8. It's a bad idea to go fishing or collect sea animals f | h. for less fortunate people. |



C.p77/ You learnt about the order of adjectives in Unit 3 (Grammar and Functions Reference page 111). Look at this example from the text: a funny Nubian accent. Which comes first, the nationality adjective or the general adjective? Make phrases by writing the adjectives from the box in the correct columns. Add an article (a or an) where necessary.

ضع الكلمات التي في الصندوق في المكان الصحيح في الجدول لتكوين عبارات قصيرة ، ضع الصفة العامة اولاً وبعدها صفة الجنسية وبعدها الاسم ، كذلك اضع (a , an) قبل الصفات العامة

boring ممل / delicious لذيذ / expensive غالي / interesting ممتع / kind لطيف / peaceful مسالم
 strange غريب / traditional تقليدي
 Egyptian مصري / Indian هندي / Iraqi عراقي / Italian ايطالي / Japanese ياباني / Lebanese لبناني
 Scottish اسكتلندي / Tunisian تونسي

an expensive	Japanese	camera	كاميرا يابانية غالية
a traditional	Iraqi	garden	حديقة عراقية تقليدية
a strange	Egyptian	clothes	ملابس مصرية غريبة
a boring	Indian	film	فلم هندي ممل
a kind	Lebanese	woman	إمرأة لبنانية لطيفة
a peaceful	Scottish	poet	شاعر اسكتلندي مسالم
an interesting	Tunisian	play	مسرحية تونسية ممتعة
a delicious	Italian	food	طعام ايطالي لذيذ

D.p77/ Write a description of your favourite television show. Write about 100 words.

Use these phrases:

My favourite television show is ...

You can see it on ... at ...

I like it because it's ...

In my favourite episode,

اكتب انشاء عن برنامجك التلفزيوني المفضل

(انشاء الوحدة الرابعة)

توم و جيرى Tom and Jerry

My favourite television show is Tom and Jerry. You can see it on Cartoon Network at 5 p.m. I like it because it's funny and full of action.

The cat, Tom, always tries to catch the mouse, Jerry, but Jerry is very smart and always escapes. In my favourite episode, Tom tries to catch Jerry using a big robot, but Jerry tricks the robot and wins.

I laugh a lot when I watch this show. It is great for all ages.

برنامجي التلفزيوني المفضل هو توم وجيري. يمكنك مشاهدته على قناة كرتون نتورك في الساعة الخامسة مساءً. أحبه لأنه مضحك ومليء بالحركة.

القط توم يحاول دائماً الإمساك بالفأر جيرى ، لكن جيرى ذكي جداً ويهرب دائماً. في الحلقة المفضلة لدي ، يحاول توم الإمساك بـ جيرى باستخدام روبوت كبير ، لكن جيرى يخدع الروبوت وينتصر.

أضحك كثيراً عندما أشاهد هذا البرنامج. إنه رائع لجميع الأعمار.



U4: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 49 (Shall I help you) هل اساعدك

Lesson 2 (AB) P. 78 - 79

HW.p79/ Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences. Then write the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

طابق بدايات ونهايات الجمل التالية ، وبعدها اكتب الجمل باستخدام الصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال التي بين الأقواس

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. I (write) to you c | a. you (feel) very tired in the morning. |
| 2. You (not know) for sure d | b. if you (help) me with my homework. |
| 3. If you (not go) to bed now, a | c. if you (give) me your address. |
| 4. If your brother (phone), f | d. if you (not ask). |
| 5. I (lend) you my bike b | e. if it (start) raining again. |
| 6. We (not be) able to play tennis e | f. I (tell) him you're out and I (take) a message. |
- 1c. I'll write to you if you give me your address.
- 2d. You won't know for sure if you don't ask.
- 3a. If you don't go to bed now, you will feel very tired in the morning.
- 4f. If your brother phones, I'll tell him you're out and I'll take a message.
- 5b. I'll lend you my bike if you help me with my homework.
- 6e. We won't be able to play tennis if it starts raining again.

U4: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 50 (On the phone) على الهاتف

Lesson 3 (AB) P. 80 - 81

D.p81/ Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام الكلمات التي في الصندوق

definitely بالتأكيد / doing يفعل / hold ينتظر / mean يقصد / right صحيح
screenings عروض / that هذا / ticket تذكرة / welcome اهلا

- Hi, Youssef. How are you? **doing**
- Do you the one in the Centre Mall? **mean**
- Have you got the for them? **ticket**
- to the UGC Cinema Information line. **Welcome**
- If you want to hear information on films showing today, please on. **hold**
- Here are details of today's..... **screenings**
- Hello, is Mike Holland? **that**
- Well, then, I'm interested. **definitely**
- And your name's Rashid, is that? **right**



E.p81/ Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

طابق بدايات ونهايات الجمل التالية

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. That's Dossari d | a. press one on your phone now. |
| 2. I was wondering if you could f | b. and they said they'd be ready today. |
| 3. If you want to book a ticket, a | c. if I come round this afternoon? |
| 4. Will it be OK c | d. with a double S and an I at the end. |
| 5. Students must e | e. show a valid student card. |
| 6. I took them in yesterday b | f. pick my photos up from the photo shop. |

U4: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 51 (I've just won the first prize) لقد فزت للتو بالجائزة الاولى

Lesson 4 (AB) P. 82 - 83

A.p82/ Match the sentences. Then join them using so or such and a clause of result.

طابق الجمل التالية ، وبعدها اربط الجمل باستخدام **so** او **such**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. She's worried. j | a. He drank four glasses of water. |
| 2. We're hungry. l | b. I can't eat anything else. |
| 3. He was thirsty. a | c. I haven't had time for lunch. |
| 4. I had a wonderful dream. e | d. I stopped taking notes. |
| 5. I've been busy. c | e. I was disappointed when I woke up. |
| 6. They had a nice time in Beirut. k | f. Few people can afford them. |
| 7. Those cars are expensive. f | g. He went to bed at nine o'clock. |
| 8. They made a terrible noise. i | h. Nobody can hear the teacher. |
| 9. I've eaten a lot. b | i. Nobody could sleep. |
| 10. He was tired. g | j. She can't sleep. |
| 11. The lesson was difficult. d | k. They're planning to go there again. |
| 12. The students are noisy. h | l. We could eat a whole cake! |

- 1j. She's **so** worried **that** she can't sleep.
- 2l. We're **so** hungry **that** we could eat a whole cake!
- 3a. He was **so** thirsty **that** he drank four glasses of water.
- 4e. I had **such** a wonderful dream **that** I was disappointed when I woke up.
- 5c. I've been **so** busy **that** I haven't had time for lunch.
- 6k. They had **such** a nice time in Beirut **that** they're planning to go there again.
- 7f. Those cars are **so** expensive **that** few people can afford them.
- 8i. They made **such** a terrible noise **that** nobody could sleep.
- 9b. I've eaten **such** a lot **that** I can't eat anything else.
- 10g. He was **so** tired **that** he went to bed at nine o'clock.
- 11d. The lesson was **so** difficult **that** I stopped taking notes.
- 12h. The students are **so** noisy **that** nobody can hear the teacher.



B.p83/ Use the prompts to write questions and answers in the present perfect simple and continuous.

استخدم المعطيات التالية لتكوين اسئلة واجوبة بزمان المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

Example.

Q: How long / she / write?

A: 4 o'clock.

Q: How many letters / she / write?

A: 12.

Q: How long **has she been writing**?

A: **Since** four o'clock.

Q: How many letters **has she written**?

A: **She's written** 12.

1.

Q: How long / you / cook?

A: Two hours.

Q: How many cakes / you / make?

A: Three.

Q: How long **have you been cooking**?

A: **For** two hours.

Q: How many cakes **have you made**?

A: **I've made** three.

2.

Q: How long / they / paint?

A: 10 o'clock.

Q: How many walls / they / paint?

A: Three.

Q: How long **have they been painting**?

A: **Since** ten o'clock.

Q: How many walls **have they painted**?

A: **They've painted** three.

3.

Q: How long / he / read?

A: 20 minutes.

Q: How many pages / he / read?

A: 30.

Q: How long **has he been reading**?

A: **For** 20 minutes.

Q: How many pages **has he read**?

A: **He's read** 30 pages.

4.

Q: How long / you / wait?

A: 40 minutes.

Q: How many cups of coffee / you / have?

A: 2

Q: How long **have you been waiting**?

A: **For** 40 minutes.

Q: How many cups of coffee **have you had**?

A: **I've had** two cups of coffee.

Test (AB) P. 84 - 85

A.p84/ Circle the correct form of the verb in each sentence.

اختر الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل في كل جملة

1. Does it ever rain / Is it ever raining in Baghdad in the summer?
2. Be quiet! I am listening / listen to something interesting on the radio.
3. Why do you take / are you taking a photo of me? Please don't.
4. My sister always goes / is going to bed late.
5. Who is knocking / knocks at the door? Can you go and see?
6. The teacher is correcting / corrects the homework every Monday.
7. Where is Dad? He has / is having a shower.
8. Where are you going / do you go tonight?
9. My cousin comes / is coming to visit me next week.
10. What time are you waking up / do you wake up when you go to school?



B.p84/ Choose the correct verb and write the sentences with the correct past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

اختر الفعل الصحيح وبعدها اكتب جمل باستخدام صيغة الماضي البسيط او الماضي المستمر للافعال التي بين الاقواس

Example. Khaled (go / find) to school when he (go / find) 5,000 Iraqi dinars in the street.

- Khaled **was going** to school when he **found** 5,000 Iraqi dinars in the street.

1. She (see / stand) at the bus stop when she (see / stand) a strange woman in a big red hat.

- She **was standing** at the bus stop when she **saw** a strange woman in a big red hat.

2. While I (fly / work) in my room, a green bird (fly / work) through the window.

- While I **was working** in my room, a green bird **flew** through the window.

3. We (walk / talk) about Khaled when he suddenly (walk / talk) into the room.

- We **were talking** about Khaled when he suddenly **walked** into the room.

4. I (read / ring) my magazine when the phone (read / ring).

- I **was reading** my magazine when the phone **rang**.

5. While you (make / sleep), I (make / sleep) a chocolate cake.

- While you **were sleeping**, I **made** a chocolate cake.

C.p85/ Complete the sentences with the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغة المضارع التام البسيط او المضارع التام المستمر للافعال التي بين الاقواس

1. I (read) this book for two months, but I still (not finish) it.

have been reading / haven't finished

2. How long (he / play) that stupid computer game? **has he been playing**

3. I (never try) Chinese food. **have never tried**

4. How many letters (you / write) today? **have you written**

5. Turn the TV off! You (watch) it for about two hours. **have been watching**

6. How long (she / wait)? **has she been waiting**

7. I (never be) to Thailand. **have never been**

8. I (work) all day, but I (not complete) all my tasks.

have been working / haven't completed

9. I (train) for a long time, but I (never run) a marathon.

have been training / have never run

10. Put your phone away! You (chat) with your friends for an hour now. **have been chatting**



D.p85/ Complete the sentences with will or won't and the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغة **will** او **won't** بالاضافة الى الصيغة الصحيحة للافعال التي بين الاقواس

1. It (not be) cold in Baghdad. You (not need) a coat at this time of year.
won't be / won't need
2. I'm afraid I probably (not be able) to play tennis with you tomorrow. **won't be able**
3. Where (they / be) at this time tomorrow? **will they be**
4. That bag looks heavy. I (help) you to carry it. **will help**
5. Who (give) me a lift to school? I'm really late. **will give**
6. Do you think we (win) the match tomorrow? **will win**
7. What (you / do) if you don't pass this exam? **will you do**

E.p85/ Choose the correct form of the verb in each sentence.

اختر الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل في كل جملة

1. What's wrong with your leg? I *broke* / **'ve broken** it.
2. **Have you read** / *Did you read* any of Gibran's poems?
3. Why are there so many police cars? I think there *was* / **has been** an accident.
4. Where's Mariam? She **has gone** / *went* out. She'll be back soon.
5. My father is a writer. He *wrote* / **has written** a lot of books.

نهاية الوحدة الرابعة

تعب الدراسة لحظة وينتهي ، لكن إهمالها تعب يستمر مدى الحياة



UNIT FIVE / الوحدة الخامسة

U5: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 54 (My kind of food) طعامي المفضل

Lesson 1 (AB) P. 86 - 87

A.p86/ How many more food words can you add in five minutes?

كم عدد من كلمات الطعام تستطيع ان تضيف في خمسة دقائق

meat لحوم	chicken	lamb	beef
fruit فواكه	oranges	apple	banana
vegetables خضروات	carrots	onion	tomato
drinks مشروبات	tea	milk	coffee
other اطعمة اخرى	salt	fish	pizza

B.p86/ Complete the phrases with words from the box. Then match the complete phrases to the pictures.

اكمل العبارات التالية بالكلمات التي في الصندوق

bread الخبز / chocolate الكاكاو / coffee قهوة / lemonade عصير الليمون / soup حساء
sugar سكر / sweets حلويات / tomato paste معجون الطماطم

1. a bar of **chocolate**
2. a bottle of **lemonade**
3. a bowl of **soup**
4. a slice of **bread**
5. a tin of **tomato paste**
6. a cup of **coffee**
7. a packet of **sweets**
8. a spoonful of **sugar**

C.p87/ Complete the essay with the words from the box. You do not need to use all of the words.

اكمل المقالة التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق ، لا تحتاج استخدام كل الكلمات

bake يطبخ / bowl وعاء / cakes كعك / carton علبة كرتون / course الطبق / cup كوب / delicious لذيذ
egg بيضة / energy طاقة / flavour نكهة / fruit فواكه / glass كوب / grilled مشوي / healthy صحي / honey عسل
lemonade عصير الليمون / meal وجبة / oil زيت / onion بصل / salt ملح / slice شريحة
vegetables خضروات / weight وزن

My kind of food by Eman Malek

I like food and I eat quite a lot. I always try to eat a **healthy** diet. I think if you eat the right food, you have plenty of **energy** for the day and you don't put on **weight**. I never miss breakfast. I think it's the most important **meal** of the day. I usually start with a **bowl** of cereal and a **glass** of fruit juice. Then I have a fried **egg** with fried tomatoes and a **slice** of bread. I always fry my eggs in olive **oil**. I love the flavour. I think it's **delicious**. I usually have a **cup** of tea with a little milk and no sugar. Sugar isn't good for the teeth, so I avoid it.

I make my own sandwiches to take to college for lunch. My favourite ones are chicken with lettuce, onion, tomato and chilli. I know the **onion** makes my breath smell, but I don't care! The chilli gives the sandwich a lovely, spicy **flavour**. I also take two pieces of **fruit**, usually an apple and a banana, and a **carton** of fruit juice. My mother then makes supper for the whole family. We often start with a bowl of vegetable soup. The main **course** is usually a stew - lamb, chicken or beef with four or five different **vegetables**.



HW.p87/ Write 60-80 words about your own eating habits.

اكتب انشاء عن عاداتك الغذائية

(انشاء الوحدة الخامسة) 1

My own eating habits عاداتي الغذائية

I try to eat healthy food every day. In the morning, I usually have eggs and bread for breakfast.

At lunch, I eat rice, chicken, and salad. I don't like fast food, so I eat it only sometimes. I drink a lot of water and I don't drink soda.

In the evening, I eat something light like fruit or soup. I also try not to eat too much sugar or snacks.

أحاول أن أتناول طعاماً صحياً كل يوم. في الصباح ، أتناول عادة البيض والخبز على الإفطار.

على الغداء ، أتناول الأرز والدجاج والسلطة. لا أحب الوجبات السريعة ، لذلك أتناولها فقط أحياناً. أشرب الكثير من الماء ولا أشرب المشروبات الغازية.

في المساء ، أكل شيئاً خفيفاً مثل الفاكهة أو الحساء. كما أنني أحاول ألا أتناول الكثير من السكر أو الوجبات الخفيفة.

U5: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 55 (Healthy habits) عادات صحية

Modal verbs الافعال الناقصة

1. نستخدم الافعال الناقصة (يجب should / يجب must / يستطيع can) في حالة الاثبات للتعبير عن السماح (permission).
2. نستخدم الافعال الناقصة (can't / mustn't / shouldn't) في حالة النفي للتعبير عن المنع (prohibition).
3. (must) هي الأقوى بينهم وتعطي معنى الالتزام ، و (should) هي الاضعف وتعطي معنى الضرورة او الحاجة.
4. يأتي بعد الافعال الناقصة دائماً فعل مجرد.
5. قاعدة الاثبات:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + can + فاعل
تكملة + فعل مجرد + must + فاعل
تكملة + فعل مجرد + should + فاعل

Ex1: We can (use / used / using) the computer lab in school hours. مسموح لنا باستخدام الحاسوب

Ex2: There must (is / are / be) a teacher in the lab when we use it. يجب وجود استاذ في المختبر (الزام)

Ex3: We should sign our names in a book in the lab. ضرورة ولكن لسنا ملزمين



6. قاعدة النفي:

حالة النفي Negative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + **can't** + فاعل
 تكملة + فعل مجرد + **mustn't** + فاعل
 تكملة + فعل مجرد + **shouldn't** + فاعل

Ex4: You can take food into the library. (Negative) حول الى نفي

- You **can't** take food into the library. غير مسموح

Ex5: You **mustn't** touch this machinery. لايجب ومنوع (الزام)

Ex6: We should walk on the grass. (Negative)

- We **shouldn't** walk on the grass. ضرورة ولكن لسنا ملزمين

7. قاعدة الاستفهام:

حالة الاستفهام Question

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + فاعل + **Can't**
 ? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + **not** + فاعل + **Can**
 ? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + فاعل + **Shouldn't**
 ? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + **not** + فاعل + **Should**

Ex7: We can't take food into the library. (Question) حول الى سؤال

- **Can't** we take food into the library?

- Can we **not** take food into the library?

Ex8: We shouldn't walk on the grass. (Question)

- **Shouldn't** we walk on the grass?

- Should we **not** walk on the grass?

8. لاستخدم (**mustn't**) في حالة السؤال ماعدا السؤال الذي يلي (Question tags).

Ex9: He must tidy his room, **mustn't** he?

9. صيغة الماضي للفعل (**can**) هو (**could**).

Ex10: We can't eat our sandwiches in the library. (Change into past) حول الى الماضي

- We **couldn't** eat our sandwiches in the library.

Ex11: We (can't / go) to school yesterday. (Put the verb in the correct form) ضع الفعل بالصيغة الصحيحة

- We **couldn't** go to school yesterday.

10. الفعل (**must**, **mustn't**) ليس فيه صيغة ماضي ، لذلك عن التحويل الى الماضي نستخدم (**had to** / **didn't have to**).

Ex12: Nada must take her medicine on time. (Change into past) حول الى الماضي

- Nada **had to** take her medicine on time.

Ex13: He mustn't tidy his room because his site had done it. (Change into past)

- He **didn't have to** tidy his room because his site had done it.



Lesson 2 (AB) P. 88 - 89

A.p88/ Use the prompts to write sentences with *can* and *must* or *mustn't*.استخدم المعطيات لكتابة جمل باستخدام *can* مع *mustn't* أو *must***Example.** You (read) my essay, but you (copy) it.- You **can read** my essay, but you **mustn't copy** it.

1. You (phone) me tonight, but you (call) me after 11 p.m.

- You **can phone** me tonight, but you **mustn't call** me after 11 p.m.

2. We (have) a party, but we (clear up) afterwards.

- We **can have** a party, but we **must clear up** afterwards.

3. I (have) tea at night if I want to, but I (drink) coffee.

- I **can have** tea at night if I want to, but I **mustn't drink** coffee.

4. They (play) video games, but they (turn off) the computer by 10 p.m.

- They **can play** video games, but they **must turn off** the computer by 10 p.m.

5. He (ride) his bicycle in the park, but he (go) too fast because there are many children running around.

- He **can ride** his bicycle in the park, but he **mustn't go** too fast because there are many children running around.

6. You (study) until late tonight, but you (disturb) your sister who is asleep next door.

- You **can study** until late tonight, but you **mustn't disturb** your sister who is asleep next door.

7. She (dust) the living room, but she (touch) the paintings and the sculptures.

- She **can dust** the living room, but she **mustn't touch** the paintings and the sculptures.

8. You (walk) your dog on this path, but you (keep) it on the lead.

- You **can walk** your dog on this path, but you **must keep** it on the lead.

B.p89/ Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

اربط بدايات ونهايات الجمل التالية

Tips for students well-being

Life as a student can be stressful, so it's important to follow these guidelines to stay in a good shape.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. For many it's the first time away from home, so E | A. you shouldn't lose too much sleep - especially if you have something important the next morning. |
| 2. Students are usually very busy, but H | B. you shouldn't have to go through these problems alone. |
| 3. Going to parties and having fun is recommended, but A | C. you should break the work down into smaller parts. |
| 4. Deadlines for large assignments can be stressful, so C | D. you should put your phone aside for a period every day. |
| 5. If you're feeling anxious, talk to someone - a friend or someone from the university - B | E. you should make an effort to build a new social network. |
| 6. Experts say that for every ten hours sitting down, G | F. you shouldn't eat unhealthy food all the time. |
| 7. A good diet is key to a healthy body and brain, so F | G. you should do at least 30-40 minutes of physical activity. |
| 8. It's important to stay in touch with friends, but social media can be stressful, so D | H. you should always make time to relax and do something you like doing. |

C.p89/ Complete the school rules with *must*, *mustn't* or *can*.اكمل قواعد المدرسة باستخدام *must*, *mustn't*, *can*

Baghdad College School Rules قوانين مدرسة كلية بغداد

College starts at 8.00 a.m. You must be on time.

You mustn't be late. If you are late, you go to the school office and give the reason. **must**You run anywhere in the college building. **mustn't**You bring your mobile phone to school, but you use it in class. **can / mustn't**You bring food and drink to school if you want, but you take it into the library or classrooms. **can / mustn't**You eat, drink or chew gum in class. **mustn't**You be polite to your teachers and the other students. **must**You use the gym after school, but you tell a PE teacher you are going to. **can / must**

U5: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 56 (She has to wear a uniform) يجب عليها ارتداء زي رسمي

التعبير عن الضرورة Expressing necessity

• نستخدم (فعل مجرد + have to) عندما نريد التعبير عن الضرورة او الحاجة.

1. قاعدة الضرورة في حالة المضارع البسيط (present simple) هي:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + **has to** + (اسم مفرد / He / She / It)

تكملة + فعل مجرد + **have to** + (اسم جمع / I / We / You / They)

حالة النفي Negative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + **doesn't have to** + (اسم مفرد / He / She / It)

تكملة + فعل مجرد + **don't have to** + (اسم جمع / I / We / You / They)

حالة الاستفهام Question

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + **have to** + (اسم مفرد / he / she / it) + **Does**

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + **have to** + (اسم جمع / I / we / you / they) + **Do**

Ex1: Ali **has to do** his homework.

Ex2: We **have to do** our homework.

Ex3: I have to more vegetables. (**eat** / eats / eating)

Ex4: You (doesn't / **don't**) have to leave.

Ex5: She has to wear a uniform. (Negative) (Question) **حول الى نفي او استفهام**

- She **doesn't have to wear** a uniform.

- **Does she have to wear** a uniform?

2. قاعدة الضرورة في حالة الماضي البسيط (past simple) هي:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + **had to** + فاعل

حالة النفي Negative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + **didn't have to** + فاعل

حالة الاستفهام Question

? + تكملة + فعل مجرد + **have to** + فاعل + **Did**

Ex6: My father **had to go** to the doctor yesterday.

Ex7: We **had to wear** uniforms last week.

Ex8: Ahmed to do his homework yesterday. (has / have / **had**)

Ex9: Salma had to (**pay** / paid / paying) the bill last month.

Ex10: They had to pay for their tickets. (Negative) (Question) **حول الى نفي او استفهام**

- They **didn't have to pay** for their tickets.

- **Did they have to pay** for their tickets?



3. قاعدة الضرورة في حالة المستقبل البسيط (future simple) هي:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative
تكملة + فعل مجرد + **will + have to** + فاعل
حالة النفي Negative
تكملة + فعل مجرد + **won't + have to** + فاعل
حالة الاستفهام Question
Will + فاعل + have to + فعل مجرد + ؟

Ex11: We **will have to go** to school tomorrow.

Ex12: He (will / go) to London next week. (Insert: have to) ادرج have to في الجملة

- He **will have to go** to London next week.

Ex13: Will you have to the doctor again? (see / saw / seen)

Ex14: They will have to leave early tomorrow morning. (Negative) (Question) حول الى نفي او استفهام

- They **won't have to leave** early tomorrow morning.

- **Will they have to leave** early tomorrow morning?

4. قاعدة الضرورة في حالة المضارع التام (present perfect) هي:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative
تكملة + فعل مجرد + **has + had to** + (اسم مفرد / He / She / It)
تكملة + فعل مجرد + **have + had to** + (اسم جمع / I / We / You / They)
حالة النفي Negative
تكملة + فعل مجرد + **hasn't + had to** + (اسم مفرد / He / She / It)
تكملة + فعل مجرد + **haven't + had to** + (اسم جمع / I / We / You / They)
حالة الاستفهام Question
Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + had to + فعل مجرد + ؟
Have + (I / we / you / they / اسم جمع) + had to + فعل مجرد + ؟

Ex15: I **have never had to go** to hospital.

Ex16: She hasn't (have to / see) the doctor again. (Write in the correct form) اكتب الجملة بالصيغة الصحيحة

- She hasn't **had to see** the doctor again.

Ex17: They have had to the film in the cinema. (watches / watch / watched)

Ex18: Have you ever (has to / have to / had to) call an ambulance?

Ex19: Noor has had to finish the story. (Negative) (Question) حول الى نفي او استفهام

- **Noor hasn't had to finish** the story.

- **Has Noor had to finish** the story?

5. كلمة (must) وكلمة (have to) تحملان نفس المعنى وهو الالتزام او الواجب.

Ex20: You **have to answer** all the questions in the test.

Ex21: You **must answer** all the questions in the test.



صيغة **mustn't , don't have to**

1. نستخدم (**mustn't**) عندما نريد التعبير عن شيء **غير مسموح إطلاقاً** أو **ممنوع جداً**.

2. نستخدم (**doesn't have to / don't have to / didn't have to**) عندما نريد التعبير عن شيء **غير ضروري** أو **غير مهم**.

3. نستخدم (**doesn't have to**) عندما يكون زمن الجملة **مضارع** والفاعل (**he / she / it**) أو اسم **مفرد**.

4. نستخدم (**don't have to**) عندما يكون زمن الجملة **مضارع** والفاعل (**I / we / you / they**) أو اسم **جمع**.

5. نستخدم (**didn't have to**) عندما يكون زمن الجملة **ماضي** مهما كان الفاعل.

6. دائماً يتبع الصيغ السابقة **فعل مجرد**.

Ex1: You **mustn't** leave. **ليس مسموح لك بالمغادرة**

Ex2: You **don't have to** leave. **تستطيع المغادرة أو البقاء ، الامر متروك لك**

Ex3: We don't have to (plays / played / **play** / playing) football today.

Ex4: He have to go to the gym today. (**doesn't** / don't / didn't)

Ex5: You have to go to the gym today. (doesn't / **don't** / didn't)

Ex6: They have to go to the gym yesterday. (doesn't / don't / **didn't**)

Ex7: We (not / have to) to walk to school today. Our father will drive us there. (**Correct**)

- We **don't have to** to walk to school today. Our father will drive us there.

Ex8: She (not / have to) to walk to school today. Her father will drive her there. (**Correct**)

- She **doesn't have to** to walk to school today. Her father will drive her there.

Ex9: She (not / have to) to walk to school yesterday. Her father drove her there. (**Correct**)

- She **didn't have to** to walk to school yesterday. Her father drove her there.



Lesson 3 (AB) P. 90 - 91

A.p90/ Complete the email with *have to*, *has to*, *don't have to* or *doesn't have to*.اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام *have to*, *has to*, *don't have to*, *doesn't have to*

To: Mike

From: Nasseem

Subject: Summer jobs

Dear Mike,

How are things?

My cousin Talal got me a summer job at the restaurant where he works (he's the manager there, and he **has to** hire more people in summer). It's hard work, but I enjoy it. It's just right for me because I hate getting up early and in this job I **don't have to** get up until one in the afternoon. You see, I only **have to** be at work at three in the afternoon. Talal and I always **have to** work late - until midnight, in fact. But you know me - I don't get tired at night. I also **have to** wear a uniform, but I don't mind. Talal **doesn't have to** wear a uniform because he's the manager.

I'm a helper in the kitchen, so I **have to** help the cook. His name's Saeed and he **has to** prepare many dishes at the same time. I don't know how he does it! I **don't have to** cook anything - I just **have to** peel and chop vegetables, grate cheese and carrots, put things away in the fridge and keep the worktops clean and tidy. Saeed's cool, but my best friend there is Tuqa. She's a waiter, so she **has to** lay the tables, serve the food and clear the tables. Luckily for her, she **doesn't have to** do the washing-up like me!

The only trouble with this job is getting home at night. I finish work at about midnight. Talal **has to** stay and lock up the restaurant every night, so he can't leave until one in the morning and I **have to** wait for him. But the pay is good and everyone's really nice to me.

What about you? Did you get a summer job?

Best wishes,

Nasseem

E.p91/ Complete the sentences with *mustn't* or *not have to*.اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام *mustn't*, *not have to*

1. You read my letters. They're private. **mustn't**
2. Halim is so lucky. He pay for plane tickets. His father is a pilot and gets free tickets! **doesn't have to**
3. We take a dictionary to the class, but it would probably be very useful. **don't have to**
4. You dive into the pool. The water isn't deep enough. **mustn't**
5. We go to the beach. We can go to the park instead if you prefer. **don't have to**
6. The bus arrived at exactly ten o'clock, so I wait very long. **didn't have to**
7. You park there. You will get into trouble with the police. **mustn't**
8. You cook tonight, Mum. We're going out to a restaurant. **don't have to**



U5: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 57 (You'd better wash it first) من الافضل لك غسلها اولاً

Had better من الافضل

1. نستخدم (had better) لأعطاء نصيحة قوية أو لإخبار الناس (من ضمنهم انفسنا) ماذا يجب ان نفعل وحسب القاعدة التالية:

حالة الاثبات Affirmative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + (had better / 'd better) + فاعل

حالة النفي Negative

تكملة + فعل مجرد + had better not + فاعل

Ex1: I have to be at the train station by nine, so I'd better leave now or I will miss the train.

Ex2: 'I feel very ill!' 'You'd better not go to school today.'

Ex3: I have to be at the airport by ten, so I'd better now. (leaves / left / leave)

Ex4: 'I feel terrible.' 'You'd better not (go / went / gone) to work today.'

Ex5: You had better add some salt to this soup. (Negative) حول الى نفي

- You **had better not add** some salt to this soup.

Ex6: You (had not better / **had better not**) postpone today's work to tomorrow.

2. كلمة (had better) مشابهة في المعنى لكلمة (should)، الفرق الوحيد هو ان (should) نستخدمها لأعطاء نصيحة بصورة عامة بينما (had better) نستخدمها لأعطاء نصيحة عن موقف معين أو محدد، أي ان جملة (had better) تحتوي على تفاصيل أكثر.

Ex7: We **should meet** more often. رأي عام

Ex8: We'd better meet at eleven o'clock outside the station. رأي محدد بالوقت والمكان

SB.p57/ Match the problems with the responses.

طابق المشاكل مع الردود الخاصة بها

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. This soup is a bit tasteless. B | A. I think you'd better not. It's already too sweet. |
| 2. The rice is cold. D | B. You'd better add some parsley and lemon juice. |
| 3. Shall I put some more sugar in the fruit salad? A | C. You'd better leave it to cool down for a few minutes. |
| 4. I'm afraid the coffee is boiling hot. C | D. I'd better heat it in the microwave. |
| 5. I'm starving. Can I make a sandwich? E | E. You'd better not. Supper will be ready in 5 minutes. |



Lesson 4 (AB) P. 92 - 93

C.p93/ Which words go together? Match the nouns and noun phrases in the box with the correct verbs.

أي الكلمات تأتي مع بعض ، طابق الاسماء والعبارات الاسمية التي في الصندوق مع الافعال المناسبة لها

a cake كعكة / a fire نار / butter, sugar and flour زبدة وسكر وطحين / cheese جبن / eggs بيض
meat لحم / onions بصل / some water بعض الماء / the table الطاولة / the washing-up غسل الاواني

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. grate cheese | 5. mix butter, sugar and flour | 8. make a cake |
| 2. chop onions | 6. beat eggs | 9. lay the table |
| 3. light a fire | 7. grill meat | 10. boil some water |
| 4. do the washing-up | | |

U5: Lesson 5 (SB) P. 58 - 59 (If you were in trouble ...) لو كنت في مشكلة

الحالة الشرطية الثانية "if" Second conditional

1. نستخدم هذا النوع من الجمل الشرطية للتحدث عن اشياء غير حقيقية (خيالية او غير محتملة الوقوع) في الوقت الحالي او المستقبل وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + مصدر مجرد + (would / could / 'd) + فاعل , تكملة + فعل ماضي بسيط + فاعل + If
تكملة + فعل ماضي بسيط + فاعل + If + تكملة + مصدر مجرد + (would / could / 'd) + فاعل

Ex1: If we **lived** in Mexico, we **would speak** Spanish.

Ex2: If we **met** up for lunch, we **could go** to that new restaurant.

Ex3: We **would buy** a big house if my father **won** a million pound.

Ex4: If I (play) tennis, I would join the tennis club. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If I **played** tennis, I would join the tennis club.

Ex5: What (you / do) if you (find) three million Iraqi dinars in the street? (2nd conditional)

- What **would you do** if you **found** three million Iraqi dinars in the street?

Ex6: What would you buy first if you (win) a million pound? (Correct)

- What would you buy first if you **won** a million pound?

Ex7: Ali would be really happy if he (can) spend the summer studying in London. (Correct)

- Ali would be really happy if he **could** spend the summer studying in London.

Ex8: I (learn) to parachute if my friend (say) she would do it with me.

(Write the sentence in the 'Second conditional' using the verbs in brackets)

- I **would learn** to parachute if my friend **said** she would do it with me.

Ex9: If you found a snake in your bed, what (you do)? (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If you found a snake in your bed, what **would you do**?

Ex10: She would look much nicer if she (wear) contact lenses. (Correct the verb in brackets)

- She would look much nicer if she **wore** contact lenses.

Ex11: If I had lots of money, I (buy) a race horse. (Correct)

- If I had lots of money, I **would buy** a race horse.



2. في الحالة الشرطية الثانية اذا وجدنا (not) في جملة (فعل الشرط) نضع قبلها (did) واذا وجدناها في جملة (جواب الشرط) نضع قبلها (would / could) مثل:

Ex12: If you (not tell) me about your birthday, I would forget it. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If you **didn't tell** me about your birthday, I would forget it.

Ex13: If I (not / have) my pictures, I (not / remember) all the places I've been to. (2nd conditional)

- If I **didn't have** my pictures, I **wouldn't remember** all the places I've been to.

Ex14: I would watch TV all day if I (not work). (Put the verb in the correct form)

- I would watch TV all day if I **didn't work**.

Ex15: If you didn't walk in this rain, you (not get) very wet. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If you didn't walk in this rain, you **wouldn't get** very wet.

Ex16: Unless you invited me, I (not come) to your party. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- Unless you invited me, I **wouldn't come** to your party.

3. افعال الكينونة الماضية (was / were) اذا لم يأتي بعدها فعل ينتهي بـ (ing) تعتبر (ماضي بسيط) وكذلك فعل التملك الماضي (had) اذا لم يأتي بعده (تصريف ثالث p.p) يعتبر ماضي بسيط.

Ex17: If she **was** ill, I'd **stay** at home.

Ex18: If they **were** ill, they'd **stay** at home.

Ex19: If I **had** lots of money, I **would buy** a sport car.

Ex20: I **could send** a message to all my friends if I **had** my phone.

4. في الحالة الشرطية الثانية اذا وجدنا (be) في جملة (فعل الشرط) نحولها الى (was / were) حسب الفاعل الذي قبلها حيث نقوم بتحويل (be) الى (was) اذا كان الفاعل (اسم مفرد / he / she / it) والى (were) اذا كان الفاعل (اسم جمع / I / we / you / they) اما اذا وجدنا (be) في جملة (جواب الشرط) نضع قبلها (would / could) مثل:

Ex21: He (be) more attractive if he shaved his beard off. (Correct)

- He **would be** more attractive if he shaved his beard off.

Ex22: If you didn't have duty-free shops at the airport, people (not be) very happy. (Correct)

- If you didn't have duty-free shops at the airport, people **wouldn't be** very happy.

Ex23: What would you do if you (be) me? (Put the verb in the correct form)

- What would you do if you **were** me?

5. في الحالة الشرطية الثانية اذا وجدنا (have) في جملة (فعل الشرط) نحولها الى (had) واذا وجدناها في جملة (جواب الشرط) نضع قبلها (would / could) مثل:

Ex24: If I (have) lots of money, I would buy a horse. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If I **had** lots of money, I would buy a horse.

Ex25: If I (**had** / have) a computer, we could surf online.

Ex26: If I (have) the time and the money, I'd come with you. (Correct the verb)

- If I **had** the time and the money, I'd come with you.

Ex27: They (have) money if they worked. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- They **would have** money if they worked.



6. نحول (be) الى (were) اذا وجدناها في هذه العبارة **if I (be) you** مثل:

Ex28: If I (be) you, I would study hard. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If I **were** you, I would study hard.

Ex29: If I (be) you, I would accept the job. (Put the verb in the correct form)

- If I **were** you, I would accept the job.

Lesson 5 (AB) P. 94 - 95

A.p94/ Write the sentences in the second conditional. Add a comma where necessary.

اكتب الجمل مستخدماً الحالة الشرطية الثانية ، اضع فاصلة عند الضرورة

Example. If she (have) shorter hair, she (look) nicer.

- If she **had** shorter hair, she **would look** nicer.

1. You (not be) tired if you (go) to bed earlier.

- You **wouldn't be** tired if you **went** to bed earlier.

2. If he (exercise), he (be) a lot healthier.

- If he **exercised**, he **would be** a lot healthier.

3. I (go) on long holiday, if I (have) the time and the money.

- I **would go** on long holiday, if I **had** the time and the money.

4. If you (have) wings, where (you / fly)?

- If you **had** wings, where **would you fly**?

5. Everybody (like) him if he (not be) so bossy.

- Everybody **would like** him if he **was not** so bossy.

6. I (tell) you the answer if I (know) it.

- I'd tell you the answer if I **knew** it.

B.p95/ Write questions with the second conditional form of the verbs in brackets.

اكتب اسئلة باستخدام الحالة الشرطية الثانية للافعال التي بين الاقواس

How honest are you? ما مدى صدقك

1. If a shop assistant (give) you too much change by mistake, what (you / do)?

- If a shop assistant **gave** you too much change by mistake, what **would you do**?

2. If the waiter (forget) to give you your bill at a café, (you / tell) him?

- If the waiter **forgot** to give you your bill at a café, **would you tell** him?

3. If you (find) two million Iraqi dinars in the street, (you / take) it to the police station?

- If you **found** two million Iraqi dinars in the street, **would you take** it to the police station?

4. If you (see) your friend cheating in an exam, what (you / do)?

- If you **saw** your friend cheating in an exam, what **would you do**?

5. If a very rich friend (lend) you 50,000 Iraqi dinars and (forget) about it, (you / keep) quiet or (you / remind) your friend?

- If a very rich friend **lent** you 50,000 Iraqi dinars and **forgot** about it, **would you keep** quiet or **would you remind** your friend?

6. If you (crash) your scooter into an expensive car and nobody (see) you, what (you / do)?

- If you **crashed** your scooter into an expensive car and nobody **saw** you, what **would you do**?

7. (you / read) your sister's or brother's letters and diary if you (find) them in their cupboard?

- **Would you read** your sister's or brother's letters and diary if you **found** them in their cupboard?

8. How (you / feel) if you (lose) your bag containing 50,000 Iraqi dinars?

- How **would you feel** if you **lost** your bag containing 50,000 Iraqi dinars?



U5: Lesson 6 (SB) P. 60 (If I were you, I wouldn't worry)

لو كنت مكانك لما قلقت

Asking for and giving advice or opinions

طلب واعطاء النصائح والآراء

1. للسؤال عن الرأي أو النصيحة نستخدم (should).

Ex1: Should I go to Egypt to study?

Ex2: What do you think I should do?

2. لأعطاء الرأي أو النصيحة نستخدم احد التعبيرات التالية:

فعل مجرد + I think you should
 الجمل الامرية تبدأ بالفعل المجرد مباشرة Imperative
 ؟ + فعل مجرد + Why don't you
 فعل مجرد + If I were you, I would

Ex3: I think you should study at home.

Ex4: Go to Egypt if you think you'll enjoy it.

Ex5: Why don't you study in Iraq?

Ex6: If I were you, I would study at home.

Ex7: If I were you, I wouldn't (worries / worrying / worry)Ex8: Why you go to the doctor? (doesn't / don't)

SB.p60/ Match the problems to the advice.

طابق المشاكل مع النصائح

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. You want to lose weight. G | A. Avoid coffee at bedtime. / Read a boring book in bed. |
| 2. You aren't sleeping well. A | B. Eat more meat and fish. / Do weightlifting at the gym. |
| 3. You want to put on weight. B | C. Get extra lessons from the Maths teacher. / Do extra homework. |
| 4. You can't wake up in the mornings. E | D. Go for a run every day. / Join a gym. |
| 5. You want to get better marks in Maths. C | E. Go to bed earlier. / Buy an alarm clock. |
| 6. You have a bad cold. F | F. Spend the day in bed. / Drink hot lemon and honey. |
| 7. You have a sore knee. H | G. Stop eating bread and cakes. / Take more exercise. |
| 8. You want to get fitter. D | H. Stop riding your bike for a week. / Put ice on it. |



Lesson 6 (AB) P. 96 - 97

A.p96/ Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the dialogue.

ضع الكلمات الموجودة بين الأقواس بالترتيب الصحيح لتكمل المحادثة التالية

Laith: I'm feeling really stressed lately.

Noura: (make / don't / Why / you) Why don't you make a list of the reasons for your stress? Then you can deal with them one by one.

Laith: Well, the main thing is that I've got too much work to do for university.

Noura: Who doesn't?! (should / make / I / you / think) I think you should make a schedule with your study time and stick to it. (include / But / forget / to / don't) But don't forget to include some 'me' time. You know, fun stuff.

Laith: Great idea! What else? I'm also having some problems with a friend of mine. He's my best friend, but sometimes he seems jealous of my other friends. What (should / think / you / do / I) do you think I should do?

Noura: Maybe he feels left out. (I / I'd / you, / were / If) If I were you, I'd invite him to go out with your other friends, so he can feel included.

Laith: That makes sense. Let's see ... apart from those two things, the only other problem is that I'm not sleeping very well.

Noura: You'll probably sleep better when you have dealt with the other problems. But (it's / to / have / a / idea / good) it's a good idea to have a sleep schedule: always go to bed and get up around the same time.

Laith: Nice! Thanks a lot for your advice!



U5: Lesson 7 (SB) P. 61 (I wish I could fly) اتمنى لو استطيع الطيران

Wishes الامنيات

1. لتكوين الامنيات في زمن المضارع (Present) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + (فعل ماضي) + فاعل + (wish / wishes) + فاعل
تكملة + (فعل ماضي) + فاعل + If only

Ex1: He wishes he more people in this town. (know / knew / known)

Ex2: If only I (has / have / had) more friends.

Ex3: We all wish we (be) richer. (Present wish) امنية في زمن المضارع
- We all wish we **were** richer.

Ex4: If only I (can) speak lots of languages. (Present wish)
- If only I **could** speak lots of languages.

Ex5: I wish I (do / not) need to work so hard. (Present wish)
- I wish I **didn't** need to work so hard.

Ex6: She (wish / wishes) she had lots of money.

Ex7: If only I rich. (become / became)

2. لتكوين الامنيات في زمن المستقبل (Future) نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + فعل مجرد + (would / could) + فاعل + (wish / wishes) + فاعل
تكملة + فعل مجرد + (would / could) + فاعل + If only

Ex8: If only Salwa (change) the day of her party. (Future wish) امنية في زمن المستقبل
- If only Salwa **would change** the day of her party.

Ex9: I wish I come to your party next week, but I'm going to be away. (can / will / could)

Ex10: I wish it (get) cooler. (Future wish)
- I wish it **would get** cooler.

Ex11: Sultan (wish / wishes) his brother would help him.

Lesson 7 (AB) P. 98 - 99 للاطلاع



U5: Lesson 8 (SB) P. 62 - 63 (If only I'd listened) لو انني فقط اصغيت

Unit

5

Lesson 8
AB 100-101

If only I'd listened

1 Read the article and choose the best answers.

- 1 Dana didn't take her brother to the beach because ...
 - a he had told her a lie.
 - b he had to go for a bike ride.
 - c she wanted to get away from her family for the day.
- 2 Dana thinks the accident was ...
 - a her brother's fault.
 - b her fault.
 - c Layla's fault.

DANA'S STORY

Dana El Nasser tells *Teen Magazine* about the worst day of her life and her biggest regret.

Last month, my friend Layla El Fayed invited me to go to the park for a picnic with her family. I was really looking forward to it. I always have fun when I'm with Layla and it's always nice to get away from my own family for a change. Unfortunately, my little brother Faisal heard about the picnic and said he wanted to come, too. He's only nine and he's a bit silly sometimes. For example, he likes pulling Layla's long hair and he usually tries to make Layla and me play football with him. It can be quite annoying for us when we just want to chat and listen to music. So, when he asked me to take him on the picnic with Layla, of course I said no and then I didn't think about it again.



On the day of the picnic, I got up early and got my things ready. I had made two big cakes to take with me and I'd bought fruit and some bottles of lemonade. Layla and her family had agreed to pick me up at my house at ten o'clock. At half past nine, Faisal came into the sitting room with his sports bag. 'I'm ready to go,' he said. 'When's Layla going to be here?' I was so angry I didn't answer him and he went to look for Mum. A few minutes later, my mother came into the sitting room with him. 'Why can't Faisal go with you?' she asked. 'He'll be good



this time.' I said, 'Sorry, Mum, I can't take him. Layla and her family don't have room in the car.' I didn't know if this was true, but it stopped Faisal and my mother arguing with me. At ten o'clock, I heard the El Fayed's car and ran outside to meet them. My mother and Faisal never saw that the El Fayed's were taking two cars to the park and there was plenty of space in both of them that day.

It was fun at the park to start with. Everyone loved my cakes. Layla and I talked for ages about our plans for the future. We played on the swings and ran about, and we played cards. The weather was perfect – not too hot and with a nice breeze. Suddenly, at two o'clock, everything changed. I got a phone call on my mobile. It was my mother. She told me that Faisal was in hospital. After I'd left the house, he had gone out on his bike without telling her. A car had hit him. He was unconscious

and he had a broken wrist. My mother was crying.

The El Fayed's drove me straight to the hospital. My parents were there already. Faisal was still unconscious and he looked very white. There was some blood on his forehead and a big cut on his cheek. The doctor told me that my brother was going to be OK, but I felt terrible. My first words to my mum were, 'I wish I'd taken him to the park. I wish I hadn't been so selfish. If only I had listened to you, Mum.'

Faisal was unconscious for three days. We were all sick with worry for those three days, but in the end everything was OK. On the fourth day, he woke up and asked for ice cream, sweets and lemonade. Everyone laughed and the doctors said he could come home. Layla came to see him a few days later at home. Although his broken wrist was in a plaster cast he still managed to pull her hair!

2 Study the language box and the examples.

Regrets Grammar and Functions Reference p.119

- To express regret, use *I wish* or *If only* + the past perfect tense.

I wish I had listened to my mother.

I wish I hadn't been so selfish.

If only I had taken my brother with me.



Dana's story قصة دانا

قطعة الوحدة الخامسة

1. Dana didn't take her brother to the beach because
 a. he had told her a lie. لأنه أخبرها بكذبة
 b. he had to go for a bike ride. لأنه كان عليه ان يذهب في جولة بالدراجة
 c. she wanted to get away from her family for the day. لأنها ارادت الابتعاد عن عائلتها طوال اليوم
2. Dana thinks the accident was
 a. her brother's fault. بسبب اخيها
 b. her fault. بسببها
 c. Layla's fault. بسبب ليلي
3. In which two ways does Faisal sometimes annoy Dana and Layla?
 - He pulls Layla's long hair and he wants the girls to play football with him when they want to talk to each other.
 كيف كان فيصل يزعج دانا وليلى
 كان يقوم بشد شعر ليلي الطويل ويريد من الفتيات أن يلعبوا معه كرة القدم عندما يرغبن في التحدث مع بعضهم البعض
4. What food and drink did Dana take with her for the picnic?
 - She baked two cakes for the picnic and she took fruit and lemonade.
 ما هو الطعام والشراب الذي اخذته دانا معها للنزهة
 خبزت كعكتين بالاضافة الى الفاكهة وعصير الليمون
5. What lie did Dana tell her mother?
 - Dana told her mother that there wouldn't be space in the car for Faisal, but she didn't know if this was true.
 أي كذبة اخبرت دانا والدتها
 دانا أخبرت والدتها أنه لن يكون هناك مكان لفیصل في السيارة ، لكنها لا تعرف ما إذا كان هذا صحيحاً
6. How did Dana find out about Faisal's accident?
 - Dana's mother phoned her.
 كيف علمت دانا بحادث فیصل
 والدتها اتصلت بها
7. How did the accident in (Dana's story) happen?
 - Faisal had gone out on his bike and a car had hit him.
 كيف وقع الحادث في قصة دانا
 خرج فیصل بدراجته واصطدمت به سيارة
8. How did Dana feel when she saw her brother in hospital?
 - She felt extremely sorry.
 كيف شعرت دانا عندما رأت اخاها في المستشفى
 شعرت بالأسف الشديد
9. What did Dana wish?
 - She wished she hadn't been so selfish and had taken Faisal to the park.
 ماذا تمننت دانا
 تمننت لو لم تكن أنانية جداً وأخذت فیصل إلى المتنزه
10. How did everyone know Faisal was better on the fourth day?
 - Because he wanted ice-cream, sweets and lemonade.
 كيف عرفوا أن فیصل تحسن في اليوم الرابع
 لأنه اراد الآيس كريم والحلويات وعصير الليمون



الندم Regrets

1. للتعبير عن الندم على شيء سلبي فعلناه او شيء ايجابي لم نفعله في الماضي نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + التصريف الثالث (had / hadn't) + فاعل + (I wish / If only)

2. نستخدم (had) اذا كانت جملة الندم (منفية) ونستخدم (hadn't) اذا كانت جملة الندم (مثبتة).
3. اذا كان المثال مكوّن من (جملتين) بينهما (نقطة) فالجملة الاولى هي جملة الندم حيث نتوقف عند تلك النقطة.
4. اذا وجدنا كلمة (Unfortunately) او (didn't) نحذفها عند الاجابة.

Ex1: She lost their address. That's why she couldn't write to them. (Regret. Use: I wish) عبر عن الندم

- I wish she hadn't lost their address.

Ex2: Unfortunately, I ate three bars of chocolate. That's why I felt sick. (Regret. Use: If only)

- If only I hadn't eaten three bars of chocolate.

Ex3: Unfortunately, I spent all my money at the weekend. That's why I can't buy those bags. (Regret)

- I wish I hadn't spent all my money at the weekend.

Ex4: Unfortunately, I didn't wake up early. That's why I missed the bus. (Regret. Use: I wish)

- I wish I had woken up early.

Ex5: Unfortunately, he fell over during the race. That's why he didn't win. (Regret. Use: If only)

- If only he hadn't fallen over during the race.

Ex6: He exceeded the speed limit. As a result, he failed the driving test. (Show regret. Use: If only)

- If only he hadn't exceeded the speed limit.

Ex7: Your team didn't train well. They lost the match. (Regret. Use: If only)

- If only they had trained well.

Ex8: If only I hadn't (eaten / eat) three bars of chocolate. (Choose)

Ex9: Unfortunately, she forgot their address. That's why she couldn't write to them. (Regret: If only)

- If only she hadn't forgotten their address.

Ex10: Unfortunately, I missed my flight. That's why I won't get to Boston in time for the meeting.

(Regret)

- I wish I hadn't missed my flight.

Ex11: Unfortunately, I went to bed so late yesterday. That's why I was tired. (Regret. Use: I wish)

- I wish I hadn't gone to bed so late yesterday.

Ex12: He hit a tree when reversing. As a result, he failed your driving test. (Show regret)

- If only he hadn't hit a tree when reversing.

Ex13: She drove into the back of a parked car. That's why she failed the driving test. (Regret: I wish)

- I wish she hadn't driven into the back of a parked car.

5. اذا وجدنا كلمة (because) او (but) تكون جملة الندم بعدها.

Ex14: You failed the driving test because you didn't follow the rules. (Show regret)

- I wish I had followed the rules.

Ex15: You wanted to reach the meeting in time, but you woke up late. (Show regret)

- I wish I hadn't woken up late.



6. إذا وجدنا كلمة (and) تكون جملة الندم قبلها وعند الاجابة نتوقف عند كلمة (and).

Ex16: He didn't drive more carefully and he crashed a car. (Show regret. Use: If only)

- If only he had driven more carefully.

Ex17: She parked illegally and she got a fine. (Regret. Use: if only)

- If only she hadn't parked illegally.

7. عندما يُطلب منك شخصياً ان تعبر عن ندمك (اي ان فاعل الجملتين هو you) فسيكون فاعل الحل (I) ونحول ضمير التملك (your) الى (my) اذا وجدناه في الجملة.

Ex18: You didn't revise for your English exam and you got a bad mark. You feel sorry about this. (Show Regret)

- I wish I had revised for my English exam.

Ex19: You are at the park with your friends. You would like to take some photos, but you have forgotten to bring your camera. (Regret. Use: I wish)

- I wish I had brought my camera. / - I wish I hadn't forgotten my camera. **كلا الجوابين صح**

8. عند وجود (too much / a lot of) نحولهم الى (so much) مع الجمل المنفية.

Ex20: You've eaten too much chocolate and now you feel sick. (Regret. Use: I wish)

- I wish I hadn't eaten so much chocolate.

Ex21: You drank a lot of coffee. Now you are in bed and you can't sleep. (Regret. Use: If only)

If only I hadn't drunk so much coffee.

9. الفعل الذي يجب تحويله الى تصريف ثالث نجده بعد كلمة (didn't) إن وجدت او بعد (to) المصدرية او بعد الفاعل مباشرة.

Ex22: You didn't slow down at a crossroads. As a result, you failed the driving test. (Regret. I wish)

- I wish I had slowed down at a crossroads.

Ex23: You decided not to go to the park with your friends. Now you regret it. (Regret. If only)

- If only I had gone to the park with my friends.

Ex24: Unfortunately, you drove through a red light. You failed the driving test. (Show Regret)

- If only I hadn't driven through a red light.

10. عند وجود (some) نحولها الى (these) او (any) مع الجمل المنفية.

Ex25: You bought some shoes last week. You've decided you don't like them. (Show regret)

- If only I hadn't bought these shoes last week.

Ex26: You bought some books yesterday. You've decided you don't like them. (Show regret)

- If only I hadn't bought any books yesterday.

11. إذا وجدنا (was / were) نحولها الى (been) مثل:

Ex27: Unfortunately, my sister phoned me, but I wasn't at home. (Regret. Use: I wish)

- I wish I had been at home.

Ex28: She was crying when she left the party because they were so selfish with her. (Regret: If only)

- If only they hadn't been so selfish with her.

12. في بعض الجمل لانحوّل (you) او (your) لأن معنى الجملة يرفض ذلك.

Ex29: Unfortunately, you were rude to your brother. Now he won't give us a lift to the cinema. (Regret)

- If only you hadn't been rude to your brother.



Lesson 8 (AB) P. 100 - 101

A.p100/ Read the article on pages 62 and 63 of the Student's Book again and match the words and phrases with their meanings.

اقرأ المقالة الموجودة في كتاب الطالب ص 62-63 مجدداً وطابق الكلمات والعبارات التالية مع المعاني المرادفة لها

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. picnic نزهة | e | a. at the beginning |
| 2. annoying مزعج | b | b. difficult, causing trouble |
| 3. chat محادثة | i | c. disagree; fight with words |
| 4. room (in the car) مكان | d | d. space |
| 5. argue يجادل | c | e. meal outside |
| 6. to start with بداية | a | f. gentle wind |
| 7. for ages لوقت طويل | j | g. not awake |
| 8. breeze نسيم | f | h. only thinking about yourself |
| 9. unconscious فاقد الوعي | g | i. talk in a friendly way |
| 10. selfish اناني | h | j. for a long time |

تمرين (B) ص 100-101. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

D.p101/ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام الصيغة الصحيحة للافعال التي في الصندوق

listen يصغي / not eat لا يأكل / not sleep لا ينام / pay ينتبه / study يدرس / take يأخذ

Example. The traffic's terrible! I wish I the train. **had taken**

- I didn't pass in the Literature exam. If only I more. **had studied**
- I'm so full! I wish I so much! **hadn't eaten**
- I wish I to you when you said I shouldn't take this job. It's awful! **had listened**
- My holiday in Paris is going great, but I wish I more attention during my French classes! **had paid**
- I'm really late! If only I so late this morning. **hadn't slept**

U5: Lesson 9 (SB) P. 64 (An email of complaint) ايميل شكوى

Lesson 9 (AB) P. 102 - 103

C.p102/ Put the words in brackets in the correct order to form useful sentences for emails. Then mark them F (formal) or I (informal).

ضع الكلمات التي بين الاقواس بالترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل مفيدة للايميل ، بعدها ضع حرف F امام الجمل الرسمية و حرف I امام الجمل الغير رسمية

- I well. (finds / hope / you / this) **hope this finds you F**
- I ... some issues in the flat. (connection / writing / am / in / with) **am writing in connection with F**
- Just we've got some problems. (say / a quick / note / that / to) **a quick note to say that I**
- Would the chair? (mind / replacing / you) **you mind replacing I**
- I fix that. (could / appreciate it / would / you / if) **would appreciate it if you could F**
- I the problems. (some / of / pics / attaching / am) **am attaching some pics of I**
- Please the issues. (of / attached / find / photos) **find attached photos of F**
- I with these matters promptly. (will / that / trust / deal / you) **trust that you will deal F**



D.p103/ Write a formal email of complaint.

اكتب ايميل رسمي عن شكوى

(انشاء الوحدة الخامسة) 2

A formal email of complaint **ايميل رسمي عن شكوى**

Dear Mr. Mathews,

I hope you are well. I am writing to report several urgent issues in my rented flat.

The roof is leaking into my bedroom, and the central heating is not working, making it difficult to stay warm. There is also a cockroach infestation in the kitchen, and frequent power cuts disrupt my studies. Additionally, the bathroom window is broken, affecting privacy and security.

Please arrange for repairs ASAP and let me know when maintenance can be scheduled. I appreciate your prompt attention to these matters.

Best regards,

Ali Yahya

عزيزي السيد ماثيوز،

أتمنى أن تكون بخير. أكتب لك لأبلغك عن عدة مشاكل عاجلة في الشقة المستأجرة.

تتسرب المياه من السقف في غرفة نومي ، ونظام التدفئة المركزية لا يعمل ، مما يجعل من الصعب البقاء دافئاً. هناك أيضاً انتشار للصراصير في المطبخ ، وانقطاع الكهرباء المتكرر يعطل دراستي. بالإضافة إلى ذلك ، نافذة الحمام مكسورة مما يؤثر على الخصوصية والأمان.

يرجى ترتيب الوقت من أجل الإصلاحات في أقرب وقت ممكن وإخباري بموعد الصيانة. أشكرك على اهتمامك السريع بهذه المسائل. مع أطيب التحيات، علي يحيى

U5: Round up (SB) P. 65 للاطلاع

Revision (AB) P. 104 – 105

A.p104/ Write five words from the list in each category.

اكتب خمسة كلمات في كل قائمة مع وضع كل كلمة بالفئة الخاصة بها

ankle / face / delicious / chips / chilli / carrots / boiled / مقلي / كاحل / وجه / لذيذ / رقائق البطاطا / فلفل حار / جذر

forehead / knee / honey / heated / مشوي / مقلي / جبين / ركة / عسل / تم تسخينه

lemonade / wrist / بدون طعم / حلو / مطهو / متبل / مالح / عصير الليمون / معصم

ways food is cooked طرق طبخ الطعام

boiled , fried , grilled , heated , stewed

adjectives to describe food صفات لوصف الطعام

delicious , salty , spicy , sweet , tasteless

things to eat or drink اشياء نأكلها او نشربها

carrots , chilli , chips , honey , lemonade

parts of the body اجزاء الجسم

ankle , face , forehead , knee , wrist



B.p104/ Match the words to make common phrases.

طابق الكلمات التالية لتكوين عبارات شائعة

1. salt	ملح	and	a. drink	مشروب
2. fish	سمك	and	b. pepper	فلفل
3. food	طعام	and	c. fork	شوكة
4. knife	سكين	and	d. tie	ربطة عنق
5. suit	طقم ، بدلة	and	e. chips	رقائق البطاطا
6. hopes	آمال	and	f. dreams	احلام

1b. salt and **pepper**2e. fish and **chips**3a. food and **drink**4c. knife and **fork**5d. suit and **tie**6f. hopes and **dreams****C.p104/ Match the words to make compound nouns.**

طابق الكلمات التالية لتكوين اسماء مركبة

1. air	c	a. bike
2. driving	f	b. camera
3. digital	b	c. conditioning
4. cheese	d	d. grater
5. electric	g	e. facilities
6. mountain	a	f. licence
7. sports	e	g. mixer

1c. air	conditioning	مكيف هواء
2f. driving	licence	رخصة قيادة
3b. digital	camera	كاميرا رقمية
4d. cheese	grater	مبشرة جبن
5g. electric	mixer	خلاط كهربائي
6a. mountain	bike	دراجة جبلية
7e. sports	facilities	منشآت رياضية



D.p105/ Find the pairs of words that are linked to each other by their meaning.

جد أزواج الكلمات التي تكون مرتبطة مع بعضها البعض من خلال المعنى

athletics ألعاب القوى / barbecue شواء / blood دم / boiling يغلي / camp مخيم / champion بطل / charcoal فحم
cut جرح / faint اغماء / garlic ثوم / hairdresser حلاق / hot حار / hungry جائع / onion بصل / salon صالون
starving متضور جوعاً / tent خيمة / unconscious فاقد الوعي

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|----------|------------|-------------|----------------|----------|
| 1. athletics | champion | 4. boiling | hot | 7. garlic | onion |
| 2. barbecue | charcoal | 5. camp | tent | 8. hairdresser | salon |
| 3. blood | cut | 6. faint | unconscious | 9. hungry | starving |

E.p105/ Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

اكمل الجمل التالية بكلمة واحدة في كل فراغ

bit قليلاً / were / better افضل / to لـ / wish اتمنى / only فقط / would / if اذا / must يجب / should يجب
better افضل / would / Shall هل يجب / had يملك / could / wish يتمنى

- This food's delicious, but it's a spicy for me. **bit**
- If I you, I'd eat more fruit and vegetables. **were**
- You'd not spend so much time sitting down. **better**
- You don't have sleep ten hours a day; eight is enough for most people. **to**
- I I didn't have classes today. I'm so tired! **wish**
- If we had left the house a bit earlier. **only**
- What you do if you found a wallet on the street? **would**
- We wouldn't need a car we lived in a smaller town. **if**
- You fill in a form if you want to borrow a book from the library. **must**
- I think you go to sleep earlier tonight. You look very tired. **should**
- You'd add some salt to the water otherwise the pasta will be tasteless. **better**
- If I were you, I study a second language. **would**
- I reply to his email today or tomorrow? **Shall**
- If she more money, she would buy a new mobile phone. **had**
- Where would you go if you book a long holiday? **could**
- I I had listened to your advice. I shouldn't have parked the car here. **wish**

Test (AB) P. 106 - 109

B.p106/ Write sentences expressing regret as in the example.

اكمل جمل تعبر عن الندم كما في المثال التالي

Example. If only **we hadn't changed captain two days before the match.**

- If only **we had trained harder in the week before the game.**
- If only **we hadn't had a party the night before.**
- If only **our best player hadn't had a knee problem.**
- If only **Layla had passed the ball.**
- If only **Helen hadn't fallen over.**



C.p106/ Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق

boil يغلي / bowl وعاء / charcoal فحم / fry يقلي / heat يسخن / sink حوض
 slice قطعة / شريحة / starving يتضور جوعاً / sweet حلو / tasteless بدون طعم

1. This stew is a bit Can you pass me the salt, please? **tasteless**
2. I'm When are we going to have lunch? **starving**
3. We can't have a barbecue. There isn't any **charcoal**
4. Can you some water and make the tea, please? **boil**
5. The rice isn't very hot. Let me it a bit for you in the microwave. **heat**
6. Sit down and I'll bring you a nice of soup. **bowl**
7. Where's the olive oil? I'm going to some potatoes for lunch. **fry**
8. There's lots of honey in this cake. That's why it's so **sweet**
9. Would you like a of cake with your coffee? **slice**
10. Can you take these dirty dishes to the and wash them up, please? **sink**

D.p107/ Circle the correct option to complete each sentence.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة لتكمل الجمل التالية

1. The river is very fast and dangerous. The sign says you not swim in it.
 a. **must** b. should c. might
2. I wish I that to her. Now she hates me.
 a. **hadn't said** b. didn't say c. don't say
3. You do your homework tonight. It's the weekend tomorrow.
 a. mustn't b. **don't have to** c. can't
4. We write about our favourite food for homework yesterday.
 a. have to b. had c. **had to**
5. If you change your life, how would you change it?
 a. can b. **could** c. will
6. There's a bad smell in the kitchen. empty the rubbish bin.
 a. **You'd better** b. You better c. Better you
7. What buy first if your father gave you two million Iraqi dinars?
 a. do you b. will you c. **would you**
8. My brother works for the police, but he wear a uniform.
 a. don't have to b. **doesn't have to** c. doesn't have
9. If you don't feel well, I think you go and lie down.
 a. will b. need c. **should**
10. I wish I lots of languages. Then I could be an interpreter.
 a. **spoke** b. speaking c. speak



E.p108/ Write sentences with the second conditional form of the verbs in brackets.

اكتب الجمل التالية مستخدماً صيغة الحالة الشرطية الثانية للأفعال التي بين الأقواس

1. I (give) you some money if I (have) any.
- I **would give** you some money if I **had** any.
2. If I (be) you, I (not lend) him your bike.
- If I **were** you, I **wouldn't lend** him your bike.
3. Where (you / go) if you (can) have lots of free plane tickets?
- Where **would you go** if you **could** have lots of free plane tickets?
4. If you (wake up) and (not remember) your own name, what (you / do)?
- If you **woke up** and **didn't remember** your own name, what **would you do**?
5. If she (live) nearer, I (see) her every day.
- If she **lived** nearer, I **would see** her every day.

F.p108/ Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences. Then write the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

طابق بدايات ونهايات الجمل التالية ، وبعدها اكتب الجمل مستخدماً الصيغة الصحيحة للأفعال التي بين الأقواس

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1. Do you wish you (be) still e | a. house. |
| 2. I wish I (know) d | b. drive. |
| 3. My grandmother wishes she (can) b | c. near the sea. |
| 4. Salwa wishes she (not have to) wear f | d. her name. |
| 5. They wish they (have) a bigger a | e. on holiday? |
| 6. Halim wishes he (live) c | f. glasses. |

- 1e. Do you wish you **were** still on holiday?
- 2d. I wish I **knew** her name.
- 3b. My grandmother wishes she **could** drive.
- 4f. Salwa wishes she **did not have to** wear glasses.
- 5a. They wish they **had** a bigger house.
- 6c. Halim wishes he **lived** near the sea.



G.p109/ What are these people thinking or saying? Write sentences with *If only* or *I wish* + past perfect.

ما الذي يفكر به او يقوله هؤلاء الناس ، اكتب الجمل مستخدماً *If only , I wish* بالاضافة الى الماضي التام

1. I wish / not steal that money.
- **I wish I hadn't stolen that money.**
2. If only / we walk instead of coming by car.
- **If only we had walked instead of coming by car.**
3. I wish / not leave my mobile phone at home
- **I wish I hadn't left my mobile phone at home.**
4. If only / ride more carefully.
- **If only I had ridden more carefully.**
5. If only / I work harder for this exam
- **If only I had worked harder for this exam.**
6. I wish / not eat so much chocolate
- **I wish I hadn't eaten so much chocolate.**

علي يحيى
alieng93

نهاية الوحدة الخامسة

قاوم ماتكره لتصل الى ماتحب



UNIT SIX / الوحدة السادسة

U6: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 68 (What's on?) ما الذي يعرض

Lesson 1 (AB) P. 110 - 111 للاطلاع

U6: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 69 (The language of newspapers) لغة الجرائد

Formal and informal language اللغة الرسمية والغير رسمية

1. تختلف اللغة الانكليزية المكتوبة (الرسمية) عن اللغة الانكليزية في التحدث (الغير رسمية) من حيث القواعد والمفردات ، حيث ان هنالك مفردات عامية او غير رسمية لايمكن ان نستخدمها في الجرائد او المقالات او المجلات مثلاً.
2. اما من حيث القواعد ليس من المناسب ان نستخدم الاختصارات في الانكليزية الرسمية وخصوصا المكتوبة (النصية) واليك بعض الامثلة:

Formal language لغة رسمية

Children اطفال

It **does not** rain much in Iraq.

Informal language لغة غير رسمية

Kids اطفال

It **doesn't** rain much in Iraq.

Lesson 2 (AB) P. 112 - 113

B.p112/ Match the formal (written) words and the informal (spoken) words.

طابق الكلمات الرسمية (المكتوبة) مع الكلمات الغير رسمية (المنطوقة)

- | | | |
|--|---|---------------|
| 1. arrive يصل | d | a. bang |
| 2. enter يدخل | f | b. cars |
| 3. evacuate اخلاء | e | c. get away |
| 4. explosion انفجار | a | d. get here |
| 5. instruct ارشاد ، إعطاء تعليمات | n | e. get out of |
| 6. members of the public اشخاص من العامة | j | f. go into |
| 7. move يتحرك ، ينتقل الى | c | g. inside |
| 8. not serious ليس خطيراً | h | h. OK |
| 9. place يضع | k | i. lots |
| 10. prevent يمنع | m | j. people |
| 11. interior داخل المبنى | g | k. put |
| 12. vehicles مركبات | b | l. get up to |
| 13. reach يصل | l | m. stop |
| 14. a lot of الكثير من | i | n. tell |



C.p113/ The language in these sentences is *informal*. Rewrite the sentences so that they are *formal*. Change the contractions and replace the underlined words with the words and phrases from the box, changing the form of the verbs when necessary.

لغة الجمل التالية هي غير رسمية ، اعد كتابتها بالطريقة الرسمية. غير الاختصارات واستبدل الكلمات التي تحتها خط بالكلمات والعبارات التي في الصندوق. قم بتعديل صيغة الافعال عند الضرورة

be quiet / حافظ على هدوئك / become / يصبح / boy / ولد / children / اطفال / difficult / صعب / director / مدير
 escape from / يهرب من / football / كرة القدم / goodbye / وداعا / improve / يتطور / mother / والدة / television / تلفزيون
 thank you / شكرا لك / very good / جيد جدا

Example. The lions can't get out of their cage.

- The lions **cannot escape from** their cage.

1. It's quite hard to work with all this noise.

- It **is** quite **difficult** to work with all this noise.

2. Bye! And thanks very much.

- **Goodbye!** And **thank you** very much.

3. I'm the boss of a small company in Baghdad.

- I **am** the **director** of a small company in Baghdad.

4. My mum told the kids to shut up.

- My **mother** told the **children** to **be quiet**.

5. They were watching a soccer match on TV.

- They were watching a **football** match on **television**.

6. We're having a great time.

- We **are** having a **very good** time.

7. It got so hot that we couldn't go out.

- It **became** so hot that we **could not** go out.

8. That guy won't be in the team.

- That **boy will not** be in the team.

9. The team's been getting better all this year.

- The team **has** been **improving** all this year.



U6: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 70 (You said you were happy) انت قلت انك سعيد

الكلام المنقول Reported speech

- الكلام المنقول هو نقل ما قاله شخص معين (مصدر) الى شخص او اشخاص آخرين.
- يكون زمن الجملة المنقولة دائما في الماضي.
- عند التحويل من الكلام الغير منقول (المباشر) الى الكلام المنقول نحذف علامات الاقتباس.
- الكلام المنقول مقسم الى ثلاثة اقسام في منهج الخامس الاعدادي:

أولاً: العبارات المنقولة (Reported statements).

- وهي الجملة التي نستخدم فيها الاداة (that) وتكون بين جملة القول والجملة الخبرية المنقولة ويمكن الاستغناء عنها.
- نستخدم الافعال (said) او (told) بعد الفاعل مباشرة.
- عند نقل الكلام يجب تحويل الزمن والضمائر كما في الجداول التالية:

جدول تحويل الزمن (Tense change)		
ماضي بسيط	is , am	was
ماضي مستمر	are	were
ماضي تام	was , were	had been
ماضي بسيط	has , have	had
ماضي مستمر	will	would
ماضي تام	can	could
ماضي مستمر	shall	should
ماضي تام	does , do	did
ماضي مستمر	did	had
ماضي تام	must	had to

جدول تحويل الضمائر (Pronouns change)		
الجملة المنقولة (عند الحل)	الجملة الاصلية (داخل علامات الاقتباس)	
حسب المتكلم مذكر ام مؤنث	he / she	I
حسب المتكلم مذكر ام مؤنث	his / her	my
حسب المتكلم مذكر ام مؤنث	him / her	me
	they	we
	their	our
	them	us
حسب المتلقي مفرد ام جمع	I / we	you
حسب المتلقي مفرد ام جمع	me / us	you



Ex1: Ali: 'I am tired.' (Reported statement) حول الى خبر منقول

- Ali said **that he was** tired.
- Ali said **he was** tired. **كلا الاجابتين صحيحة مع (that) او مع حذفها ، المهم هو تحويل الزمن والضمائر**

Ex2: Mum: 'It's time to get up, Bilal!' (Reported statement) حول الى خبر منقول

- Mum told Bilal that **it was** time to get up.

Ex3: Khalid: 'I don't want to go to bed.' (Reported statement)

- Khalid said **he didn't want** to go to bed.

Ex4: Dad: 'Faisal can go with you.'

- Dad told **us** Faisal **could go** with **us**.
- Dad told **me** Faisal **could go** with **me**. **كلا الاجابتين صحيحة ، اختر الضمير الذي تريد**

Ex5: Mum: 'You should eat more fruit.' (Reported speech)

- Mum said **I should eat** more fruit.

Ex6: Sara: 'I couldn't sleep last night.' (Reported speech)

- Sara said **she couldn't sleep** last night.

Ex7: Tariq: 'I know all about it.' (Reported statement) حول الى خبر منقول

- Tariq **said that he knew** all about it.

Ex8: Mariam: 'I am enjoying myself.' (Reported statement)

- Mariam **said she was enjoying** herself.

Ex9: Sara: 'My father has bought me a new computer.' (Reported statement)

- Sara **told me her father had bought her** a new computer.

Ex10: Ahmed: 'I've been playing tennis.' (Reported statement)

- Ahmed **said he had been playing** tennis.

Ex11: Salwa: 'You didn't phone me.' (Reported statement)

- Salwa **said I had not phoned her**.

Ex12: Nour: 'I was waiting outside.' (Reported statement)

- Nour **said that she had been waiting** outside.

Ex13: Sarah: 'I am studying English.' (Reported statement)

- Sarah **told me she was studying** English.

Ex14: Hassan: 'she cleaned the room.' (Reported statement)

- Hassan **told me that she had cleaned** the room.

Ex15: 'We will travel to Asia.'

- They **said they would travel** to Asia.

Ex16: Ali: 'You must leave early.' (Reported statement)

- Ali **said I had to leave** early.

Ex17: 'We will have to get to the match early. It will be easy for us to get there by bus.'

(Reported statement)

- They **said they would have** to get to the match early and it **would** be easy for **them** to get there by bus.



ثانياً: الاسئلة المنقولة (Reported questions).

1. يتم تغيير زمن الجملة والضمائر كما تم توضيحها في الجداول السابقة.

2. نستخدم الفعل (asked) بعد الفاعل مباشرة.

3. اذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام (What / Where / When / Why / How / How long ...) نكتبها كما هي ، اما اذا بدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد (Is / Are / Was / Can / Have / Has / Do / Does / Will ...) نستخدم كلمة (if) او (whether).

4. بعدها نقدم فاعل السؤال (الموجود داخل علامات الاقتباس) على الفعل المساعد ونحول ذلك الفعل المساعد الى (الماضي) ثم التكملة ثم نضع نقطة بدلاً ل علامة الاستفهام.

Ex18: Marwa: 'What time is it?' (Reported question) حول الى سؤال منقول

- Marwa asked me what time it was.

Ex19: Students: 'Is Abdulla ill?' (Reported question)

- They asked me If Abdulla was ill.

Ex20: He asked me 'Where has she been?' (Reported question) حول الى سؤال منقول

- He asked me where she had been.

Ex21: 'What will they say?' she asked. (Reported speech)

- She asked what they would say.

Ex22: He asked me 'Can he play tennis?' (Reported speech)

- He asked me if he could play tennis.

5. الفاعل الرئيسي (الموجود داخل علامات الاقتباس) اذا كان (I) نحوله الى نفس الضمير الموجود قبل كلمة (asked) واذا كان الفاعل قبل كلمة (asked) اسم مذكر نحول الـ (I) الى (he) واذا كان الفاعل قبل كلمة (asked) اسم مؤنث نحول الـ (I) الى (she) مثل:

Ex23: 'Can I borrow some money?' She asked me if (Reported speech)

- She asked me if she could borrow some money.

Ex24: Sami asked 'How can I get to the mall?' (Report the question)

- Sami asked how he could get to the mall.

6. اذا كان الفاعل الرئيسي (الموجود داخل علامات الاقتباس) هو (you) وضمير التملك (your).

- نحول فاعل السؤال (you) الى (I) وصفة التملك (your) الى (my) اذا كانت الكلمة بعد (asked) هي (me).
- نحول فاعل السؤال (you) الى (he) وصفة التملك (your) الى (his) اذا كانت الكلمة بعد (asked) هي (اسم مذكر/him).
- نحول فاعل السؤال (you) الى (she) وصفة التملك (your) الى (her) اذا كانت الكلمة بعد (asked) هي (اسم مؤنث/her).
- نحول فاعل السؤال (you) الى (we) وصفة التملك (your) الى (our) اذا كانت الكلمة بعد (asked) هي (us).
- نحول فاعل السؤال (you) الى (they) وصفة التملك (your) الى (their) اذا كانت الكلمة بعد (asked) هي (them).



7. المخطط التالي يُلخّص النقطة السابقة:

صفة التملك (your) بعد التحويل	ضمير الفاعل (you) بعد التحويل	المفعول به الموجود بعد كلمة (asked)
my	I	me
his	he	him / اسم مذكر
her	she	her / اسم مؤنث
our	we	us
their	they	them

Ex25: The customs officer asked **me** 'Can you open your suitcase?' (Reported question)- The customs officer asked me if **I** could open **my** suitcase.Ex26: The customs officer asked **him** 'Can you open your suitcase?' (Reported question)- The customs officer asked him if **he** could open **his** suitcase.Ex27: The customs officer asked **Layla** 'Can you open your suitcase?' (Reported question)- The customs officer asked her if **she** could open **her** suitcase.Ex28: The customs officer asked **us** 'Can you open your suitcase?' (Reported question)- The customs officer asked us if **we** could open **our** suitcase.Ex29: The customs officer asked **them** 'Can you open your suitcase?' (Reported question)- The customs officer asked them if **they** could open **their** suitcase.

8. اذا لم نجد اي كلمة بعد (asked) نحول ضمير الفاعل (you) الى (I) مثل:

Ex30: The customs officer asked 'Can you open your suitcase?' (Reported question)

- The customs officer asked if **I** could open my suitcase.

Ex31: 'Will you be able to come to my party?' I asked Layla (Reported question)

- I asked Layla if **she would** be able to come to my party.

Ex32: 'Have you ever been to Europe?' He asked me (Reported question)

- He asked me if **I had** ever been to Europe.

Ex33: How long have you been waiting for Faisal? She asked me (Reported question)

- She asked me how long **I had** been waiting for Faisal.

Ex34: Have you ever had a scary experience when flying? She asked (Reported question)

- She asked if **I had** ever had a scary experience when flying.

Ex35: 'How long have you been a pilot?' He asked me (Complete with a reported question)

- He asked me how long **I had** been a pilot.

Ex36: Latifa asked Zaha 'Have your designs won any prizes?' (Reported question)

- Latifa asked Zaha if **her** designs **had** won any prizes.

9. لاحظ في الامثلة التالية ان (are) تحولت الى (was) لأن الفاعل عند الاجابة هو الضمير (I).

Ex37: When **are** you going to get out of bed? My mother asked me (Report the question)

- My mother asked me when I **was** going to get out of bed.

Ex38: What **are** you doing on Friday afternoon? Adam asked me (Reported question)

- Adam asked me what I **was** doing on Friday afternoon.

Ex39: 'What **are** you doing?' He asked me (Report the question)

- He asked me what I **was** doing.

10. اذا وجدنا (do / does) نحذفها ونحول الفعل الرئيسي الى (ماضي) مثل:

Ex40: I asked Saab 'How do you start your business?' (Reported question)

- I asked Saab how he **started** his business.

Ex41: Do you still like the job? She asked me (Reported question)

- She asked me if I still **liked** the job.

Ex42: How often do you clean your teeth? He asked me how (Reported question)

- He asked me how often I **cleaned my** teeth.

Ex43: 'Do you know?' I asked him if he (**knew** / know).

Ex44: How short do you want your hair? The hairdresser asked me (Reported question)

- The hairdresser asked me how short I **wanted my** hair.

Ex45: Zainab asked Ali 'Does Zahraa speak English well?' (Reported speech)

- Zainab asked Ali if Zahraa **spoke** English well.

11. اذا وجدنا (did) نحذفها ونضع بدلاً منها (had) ونحول الفعل الرئيسي الى (تصريف ثالث p.p) مثل:

Ex46: Latifa asked Zaha 'When did you decide to be an architect?' (Reported question)

- Latifa asked Zaha when she **had decided** to be an architect.

Ex47: How did you feel on your first solo flight? He asked me (Reported question)

- He asked me how I **had felt** on **my** first solo flight.

Ex48: 'Did you have fun?' She asked me (Reported question)

- She asked me if I **had had** fun.

Ex49: Where did you lose your purse? I asked her (Reported question)

- I asked her where **she had lost** her purse.

12. اذا وجدنا (was / were) نحولها الى (had been) مثل:

Ex50: He asked me 'How long was the training?' (Reported question)

- He asked me how long **the training had been**.

Ex51: 'Were they sending the cheques to the wrong address?' The boss asked. (Reported question)

- The boss asked if **they had been** sending the cheques to the wrong address.



Ex52: Salma 'Where is the stadium?' (Reported question)

- Salma asked **where the stadium was**.

Ex53: Ali 'What do they want?' (Reported question)

- He asked me **what they wanted**.

Ex54: 'How much have you spent?' They asked us (Reported question)

- They asked us **how much we had spent**.

Ex55: 'Why are you still here?' She asked me (Reported question)

- She asked me **why I was still there**.

Ex56: Ahmed 'Is there any bread?' (Reported speech)

- Ahmed asked **if there was any bread**.

Ex57: She asked us 'Do you like Indian music?'

- She asked us **whether we liked** Indian music.

ثالثاً: الاوامر والطلبات المنقولة (Reported commands and requests).

- لتحويل الاوامر والطلبات المباشرة الى منقولة تتبع النقاط التالية:
- 1. اولا نكتب الفاعل الموجود في السؤال والذي يكون اما اسم او ضمير مثل (He / She / We / I / They).
- 2. بعدها نستخدم احد الفعلين (asked) او (told).
- 3. بعد ذلك نكتب المفعول به ، ويمكن ان يكون اسم او ضمير.
- 4. بعد المفعول به نضع (to) ثم جملة الامر او الطلب (الموجودة بين علامتي الاقتباس).
- 5. اذا كانت الجملة منفية ، عند التحويل نضع (not) قبل (to).
- 6. ملخص النقاط السابقة في القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + فعل مجرد + to + (مع الجمل المنفية فقط not) + مفعول به + (told/asked) + الفاعل

Ex58: 'Get off the grass.' He told us (Reported command) حول الى امر منقول

- He told us **to get off the grass**.

Ex59: Ahmed: 'Open the door' (Reported command)

- **Ahmed asked me to open the door**.

Ex60: Ahmed: 'Don't open the door' (Reported command)

- **Ahmed told me not to open the door**.

7. عندما لا تحتوي الجملة على فاعل ، يحق للطالب اختيار الفاعل الذي يريده وكذلك تحويل المفعول للشخص الذي يريد سواء ضمير مذكر ام مؤنث.

Ex61: 'Listen to me.' (Reported command)

- **He told me to listen to him.** / - **She told me to listen to her.** كلا الجوابين صح

Ex62: 'Do the washing-up.' (Reported command)

- **She told her to do the washing-up.** / - **He told her to do the washing-up.** كلا الجوابين صح

Ex63: 'Turn off the lights.' She told Ali. (Reported request)

- **She asked Ali to turn off the lights**.

Ex64: 'Please don't stay out too long.' (Reported request)

- **She asked me not to stay out too long**.



Lesson 3 (AB) P. 114 - 115

D.p115/ Complete the articles with the information in the box.

اكمل المقالات التالية من المعلومات الموجودة في الصندوق بصيغة الكلام المنقول (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. I don't prepare much before a film. | E. We must write a lot of bad stuff to create something good. |
| B. Before a race, I have to be very careful with my diet. | F. I write all my songs. |
| C. My next album will talk about the difficulties of life. | G. I'm going to stop competing next year to have a baby. |
| D. My next project is going to be a comedy series. | H. My next book will come out soon. |

1. Lara Daniel, the famous singer, told us that she wrote all her songs. She also revealed that her next album would talk about the difficulties of life.
2. We interviewed Ahmed Fayad, the bestselling writer. He said that authors had to write a lot of bad stuff to create something good. He also told us that his next book would come out soon.
3. Yousuf Attieh, actor, said in a recent interview that his project was going to be a comedy series. He also said that he didn't prepare much before a film.
4. Shatha Kamel, the record-breaking athlete, said recently that she had to be very careful with her diet before a race. She also told us that she was going to stop competing next year to have a baby.

U6: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 71 (A holiday to Babylon) عطلة في بابل

Lesson 4 (AB) P. 116 - 117

A.p116/ Match Younis Mahmood's words with the sentences from a newspaper report. Complete the last two sentences.

طابق كلمات يونس محمود مع الجمل الموجودة بتقرير الجريدة. اكمل اخر جملتين

- | |
|--|
| A. As a professional, I've been in six different teams. |
| B. I started playing football in Kirkuk, my home city. |
| C. I'm joining the Iraqi national team next month. |
| D. I've been looking for a new team since January. |
| E. I've been playing in the Gulf for the last two years. |
| F. I scored a lot of goals last year. |
-
- 1C. Younis Mahmood said that **he was joining** the Iraqi national team next month.
 - 2B. He said that **he had started** playing football in Kirkuk, **his** home city.
 - 3A. He said that, as a professional, **he had been** in six different teams.
 - 4E. He said that **he had been playing** in the Gulf for the last two years.
 - 5D. He said that **he had been looking** for a new team since January.
 - 6F. He said that **he had scored** a lot of goals last year.



B.p117/ Complete the reported sentences from Tariq and Layla's holiday.

اكمل الجمل المنقولة التالية الخاصة بعطلة طارق وليلى

1. Tariq. It was a boring holiday. There was nothing to do.

- Tariq said it **had been** a boring holiday. There **had been** nothing to do.

Layla. It was a fantastic holiday. There were lots to see and do.

- Layla said it **had been** a fantastic holiday. There **had been** lots to see and do.

2. Tariq. We had to go out every day and look at old buildings.

- Tariq said **they had had to go** out every day and **looked** at old buildings.

Layla. We went out on lots of interesting visits to temples and so on.

- Layla said **they had gone** out on lots of interesting visits to temples and so on.

3. Tariq. There was an international football match on TV, but I missed it.

- Tariq said there **had been** an international football match on TV, but **he had missed** it.

Layla. I took hundreds of photos of the Ishtar Gate and the temples.

- Layla said **she had taken** hundreds of photos of Ishtar Gate and the temples.

4. Tariq. I tried to have a good time with the family, but it was hard.

- Tariq said **he had tried** to have a good time with the family, but it **had been** hard.

Layla. Tariq just listened to music on his phone and didn't speak to anyone.

- Layla said Tariq **had listened** to music on his phone and **hadn't spoken** to anyone.

5. Tariq. I've never been to such a boring place.

- Tariq said **he had never been** to such a boring place.

Layla. I've been writing a diary of our holiday.

- Layla said **she had been** writing a diary of **their** holiday.

6. Tariq. I don't want to go back there ever again.

- Tariq said **he didn't want** to go back there ever again.

Layla. I will definitely go to Babylon again.

- Layla said **she would definitely go** to Babylon again.



U6: Lesson 5 (SB) P. 72 - 73 (A famous Iraqi artist) فنانة عراقية مشهورة

Lesson 5 (AB) P. 118 - 119

B.p119/ Read the reported questions and then turn them into direct speech questions.

اقرأ الاسئلة المنقولة التالية وحولهم الى اسئلة مباشرة اعتيادية

1. He asked me where I lived.
- 'Where do you live?'
2. They asked us if learning English was difficult.
- 'Is learning English difficult?'
3. She asked me when I last saw my sister.
- 'When did you last see your sister?'
4. My mother asked me if I was leaving the office late tonight.
- 'Are you leaving the office late tonight?'
5. My coach asked me if my friend could play tennis well.
- 'Can your friend play tennis well?'
6. I asked my friend if he had been waiting for a long time.
- 'Have you been waiting for a long time?'

HW.p119/ Aunt Salwa asked Jameel some questions. Change these direct questions into reported questions.

حول الاسئلة التالية الى اسئلة منقولة (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

1. How tall are you? She asked me
- She asked me **how tall I was**.
2. Which year are you in at school? She asked me
- She asked me **what year I was in at school**.
3. What are you studying? She asked me
- She asked me **what I was studying**.
4. Do you still play tennis? She asked me
- She asked me **if I still played tennis**.
5. Did you receive a birthday present from me? She asked me
- She asked me **if I had received a birthday present from her**.
6. Have you learnt to drive yet? She asked me
- She asked me **if I had learnt to drive yet**.



U6: Lesson 6 (SB) P. 74 (Different opinions) آراء مختلفة

Lesson 6 (AB) P. 120 - 121

HW.p121/ Write a review of a film or TV show.

اكتب انشاء عن فيلم او برنامج تلفزيوني

(انشاء الوحدة السادسة) 1

العثور على نيمو Finding Nemo

One of my favorite films is Finding Nemo. It is an animated movie about a little clownfish named Nemo who gets lost in the ocean. His father, Marlin, goes on a long journey to find him.

Along the way, Marlin meets Dory, a friendly but forgetful fish, and they face many adventures together. The movie is funny, emotional, and full of colorful underwater scenes.

The film teaches us about love, family, and never giving up. Children and adults can both enjoy this wonderful film.

إحدى أفلامي المفضلة هي البحث عن نيمو. إنه فيلم كرتوني عن سمكة مهرجة صغيرة تُدعى نيمو ، تضيع في المحيط. والده "مارلن" يذهب في رحلة طويلة ليجث عنه.

خلال الرحلة يلتقي بسمكة طيبة لكنها كثيرة النسيان تُدعى "دوري" ، ويواجهان معاً الكثير من المغامرات. الفيلم ممتع ومؤثر ، ومليء بالمشاهد الملونة تحت الماء.

الفيلم يعلمنا معنى الحب ، العائلة ، وآلا نستسلم أبداً. يمكن للأطفال والكبار الاستمتاع بهذا الفيلم الرائع.

U6: Lesson 7 (SB) P. 75 (A school magazine) مجلة المدرسة

Comma الفارزة

1. نستخدم الفارزة عندما يكون لدينا **تعداد** لعناصر معينة في قائمة حيث نضع الفوارز بين كل عنصر مذكور في القائمة ماعدا العنصر الاخير نضع قبله كلمة (**and**).

Ex1: He plays tennis, volleyball, football, baseball **and** basketball.

2. نستخدم الفارزة عندما يوجد **اكثر من صفة** توصف شيء معين.

Ex2: He's wearing a long, black coat.

Ex3: She bought a new, brown, leather coat.

3. نستخدم الفارزة عندما يكون لدينا جملتين واحدة رئيسية والثانية مساعدة ، فعندما تأتي **الجملة المساعدة** أولاً عندها نضع الفارزة بعدها. وعادة تبدأ الجمل المساعدة بالادوات (**If / When / While / As soon as**).

Ex4: **When** they eat, lions use their sharp front teeth.

Ex5: **If** you have finished the books, you must give them back to me.

Ex6: **While** you were studying, I was asleep.

Ex7: **If** I had money, I would buy a new car.

Ex8: **As soon as** they won one trophy, they set their sights on the next.



Lesson 7 (AB) P. 122 - 123

B.p122/ Write the paragraph with punctuation.

اكتب الفقرة الانشائية التالية بالتنقيط الصحيح

a little south african boy had a very lucky escape yesterday sitting by a river near cape town mrs betty paton saw her three year old son max holding a snake and biting it I was terrified she said it was a poisonous snake but max had almost bitten the head off mrs paton took max to hospital but doctors said that the snake had not bitten him

A little South African boy had a very lucky escape yesterday. Sitting by a river near Cape Town, Mrs Betty Paton saw her three-year-old son Max holding a snake and biting it. 'I was terrified,' she said. 'It was a poisonous snake, but Max had almost bitten the head off.' Mrs Paton took Max to hospital, but doctors said that the snake had not bitten him.

C.p123/ Study the language box on page 122. Then add commas to the sentences.

أضف الفوارز للجمال التالية


1. Before we left my aunt gave us tea and some little cakes.
- Before we left, my aunt gave us tea and some little cakes.
2. Noura Batool Nisrin Claudia and Aseel all want to come to the party.
- Noura, Batool, Nisrin, Claudia and Aseel all want to come to the party.
3. If you want to visit Jameel Saeed will give you a lift.
- If you want to visit Jameel, Saeed will give you a lift.
4. When the police car stopped the man started running away.
- When the police car stopped, the man started running away.
5. I take photos of flowers trees hills the sea and the sky.
- I take photos of flowers, trees, hills, the sea and the sky.
6. As she is interested in sport videos about the Olympic Games would be a good present.
- As she is interested in sport, videos about the Olympic Games would be a good present.
7. While we were waiting for the plane we talked about our families.
- While we were waiting for the plane, we talked about our families.
8. As soon as you get to Baghdad phone your cousin.
- As soon as you get to Baghdad, phone your cousin.



U6: Lesson 8 (SB) P. 76 - 77 (Headlines) عناوين

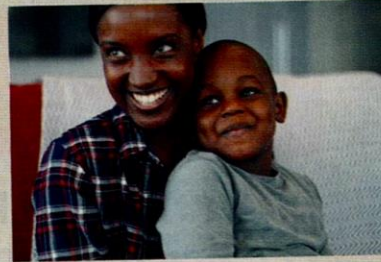
Unit
6Lesson 8
AB 124-125

Headlines

1  Read the newspaper articles and choose the best headline on page 77 for each one.

1

A little South African boy had a very lucky escape yesterday. Sitting by a river near Cape Town, Mrs Betty Paton saw her three-year-old son Max holding a snake and biting it. 'I was terrified,' she said. 'It was a poisonous snake, but Max had almost bitten the head off.' Mrs Paton took Max to hospital, but doctors said that the snake had not bitten him.



2

Some of the world's best golf players have arrived in the Gulf States for a ten-day tour. The aim of the tour is to promote the sport among local young people. The professionals will play a round or two with keen young members of golf clubs and give them tips on how to improve their game. Don't miss this fantastic opportunity!



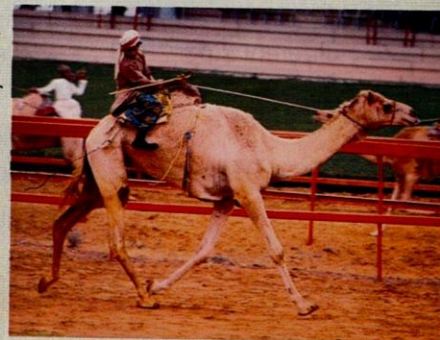
3

Thousands of fish have died in the River Thames, near London, after a traffic accident on a bridge. A petrol tanker carrying 10,000 litres of petrol hit another lorry as they were crossing the narrow bridge in Richmond. A hole was made in the side of the tanker and at least 50% of the petrol poured onto the road and then down into the river. This is the worst case of pollution in the Thames since 1992.



4

A camel has been sold for \$150,000 in the United Arab Emirates (UAE). This is not just an ordinary camel, of course! It is top-quality, racing camel – it has already won more than 50 races. Camel racing is very popular in the UAE and high prices are often paid for the best animals. The new owner is a businessman from Dubai, Omar Abdel Hamid. He said, 'Yes, this is an expensive camel. But I'm sure that I'll make a lot of money with it.'



Headlines عناوين

1 قطعة الوحدة السادسة

1. What did Max do to the snake? ماذا فعل ماكس بالثعبان
- He bit it. ماكس عض الثعبان
2. What happened to Max? Why? ماذا حدث لماكس؟ ولماذا
- He was fine because the snake hadn't bitten him. كان بخير لأن الثعبان لم يعضه
3. How long are the golf players going to stay in the Gulf States? كم من الوقت سيبقى لاعبو الجولف في دول الخليج
- 10 days. لمدة 10 ايام
4. Who are the golf players going to teach? من سيُدرّب لاعبو الجولف
- Young members of golf clubs. الاعضاء الشباب المتواجدين في نوادي الجولف
5. Which two vehicles were in the accident? ما المركبتان اللتان كانتا في الحادث
- A petrol tanker and another lorry. صهريج بنزين وشاحنة أخرى
6. What happened to the petrol? ماذا حدث للبنزين
- It poured onto the road and then down into the River Thames. انسكب على الطريق ثم سقط في نهر التايمز
7. Why was the camel so expensive? لماذا كان الجمل باهظ الثمن
- Because it is a top-quality racing camel. لأنه جمل سباقات عالي الجودة
8. Who bought the camel? من اشترى الجمل
- A businessman from Dubai, Omar Abdel Hamid. رجل أعمال من دبي ، عمر عبد الحميد

Headlines العناوين

1. عناوين الجرائد او الصحف لا تكون جُمْل كاملة وعادة تكون بـزمن المضارع.
 2. لتحويل الجملة الكاملة الى عنوان في الجريدة نتبع التالي:
- نحذف ادوات التعريف والتوكيد (a / an / the).
 - نحذف الافعال المساعدة (is / am / are / was / were).
 - نختصر الجملة بقدر مانستطيع (بدون التأثير على المعنى).
 - نحذف النقطة من نهاية الجملة.
 - اذا جاء قبل ادوات التعريف والتوكيد فعل مساعد (is/am/are/was/were) نحذف الفعل المساعد بدون حذف ادوات التعريف والتوكيد.

Ex1: The world is getting warmer. (Re-write the sentence as a headline) اكتب الجملة كعنوان في الجريدة

- World getting warmer

Ex2: The animals in Africa are decreasing in number. (Make headline) اجعل الجملة كعنوان

- Animals in Africa decreasing in number

Ex3: The number of wild leopards is in sharp decline. (Headline)

- Wild leopards in sharp decline

Ex4: Air pollution is a danger to young and old people. (Make headline)

- Air pollution a danger to young and old people



Lesson 8 (AB) P. 124 - 125

تمرين (A) ص 124. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

C.p125/ Write an article of about 80 words on Arabian Gulf Cup 25.

اكتب انشاء عن كأس خليجي 25 المقام في البصرة

(انشاء الوحدة السادسة) 2

كأس الخليج الخامس والعشرون Arabian Gulf Cup 25

The 25th Arabian Gulf Cup took place in Basra, Iraq, from January 6 to January 19, 2023. It was a special event because Iraq hosted it for the first time since 1979.

Eight teams from the Arabian Gulf competed, playing exciting matches. In the final, Iraq won against Oman with a 3-2 score.

The tournament was praised for its lively fans, good organization, and the warm welcome from the Iraqi people. It was a proud moment for the country.

أقيمت بطولة كأس الخليج العربي الخامسة والعشرون في البصرة ، العراق ، من 6 إلى 19 كانون الثاني عام 2023. لقد كانت البطولة مميزة لأن العراق استضافها لأول مرة منذ عام 1979.

تنافست ثمانية منتخبات من الخليج العربي ، وقدمت مباريات مثيرة. في المباراة النهائية ، فاز المنتخب العراقي على عمان بنتيجة 3-2.

حظيت البطولة بإشادة واسعة بسبب الجماهير الحماسية ، والتنظيم الجيد ، والاستقبال الدافئ من الشعب العراقي. كان تلك اللحظة بمثابة فخر للبلاد.

C.p125/ Write an article of about 80 words on Animals escape from zoo.

اكتب انشاء عن حيوانات هربت من حديقة الحيوان

(انشاء الوحدة السادسة) 3

حيوانات هربت من حديقة الحيوان Animals escape from zoo

Today, several animals escaped from the city zoo, causing panic. A group of monkeys, a zebra, and even a lion got out when the gate was left open.

Zoo workers and animal control teams quickly tried to catch them before they went too far. Most of the animals were safely brought back, but a kangaroo is still missing.

Officials are looking into how this happened to make sure it doesn't happen again.

اليوم ، هربت عدة حيوانات من حديقة الحيوان في المدينة ، مما تسبب في حالة من الذعر. خرجت مجموعة من القردة والحمار الوحشي وحتى أسد عندما تُركت البوابة مفتوحة.

حاول عمال الحديقة وفرق السيطرة على الحيوانات الإمساك بها بسرعة قبل أن تبتعد كثيراً. تم إرجاع معظم الحيوانات بأمان ، لكن لا يزال الكنغر مفقوداً.

يحقّق المسؤولون في سبب حدوث ذلك للتأكد من عدم تكراره مرة أخرى.



U6: Lesson 9 (SB) P. 78 (At the museum) في المتحف

الاسماء المعدودة والغير معدودة Countable and uncountable nouns

أولاً: الاسماء المعدودة (Countable nouns).

1. وهي الاسماء التي يمكن جمعها وتأتي بصيغة المفرد و الجمع.

Ex1: car - cars / man - men / cat - cats / apple - apples / door – doors

2. يمكن استخدام الارقام مع الاسماء المعدودة.

Ex2: Two coffees please.

Ex3: I have got three cars.

3. يمكن استخدام (a / an) مع الاسماء المعدودة.

Ex4: There is an apple in the fridge.

Ex5: There isn't a mall in the city.

ثانياً: الاسماء الغير المعدودة (uncountable nouns).

1. وهي الاسماء التي لايمكن جمعها وتأتي بصيغة المفرد فقط.

Ex6: water / rice / tea / money / sugar / milk / bread / salt

2. لايمكن استخدام الارقام مع الاسماء الغير المعدودة.

Ex7: I have got two money. × هذه الجملة خاطئة

Ex8: There is one milk in the fridge. × هذه الجملة خاطئة

3. لايمكن استخدام (a / an) مع الاسماء الغير المعدودة.

Ex9: I bought milk and bread.

Ex10: I feel thirsty, I need some water.

ملاحظة مهمة: هنالك اسماء يمكن ان تكون معدودة و غير معدودة ، حيث نعتد في اختيار الكلمة على معنى الجملة.

Ex11: Our flat has five rooms. (غرفة معدود)

Ex12: There's a lot of room in the back of my car. (مكان غير معدود)

Ex13: There are two hairs in my dish. (شعرتين معدود)

Ex14: Your hair will look lovely with creamy conditional. (شعر غير معدود)

Ex15: There are two lights in my room. (مصباح معدود)

Ex16: Close the curtain, there is too much light. (ضوء غير معدود)

Ex17: I thought I heard a noise. (صوت معدود)

Ex18: I can't work. There is much noise. (ضوضاء غير معدود)

Ex19: Have you got a paper to read? (جريدة معدود)

Ex20: Have you got some paper? (ورق غير معدود)

Ex21: How many times do you meet him? (عدد مرات معدود)

Ex22: Have you got time for a cup of coffee? (وقت غير معدود)

Ex23: The exercises in this unit are more difficult than usual. (تمارين معدود)

Ex24: Physical exercise is good for the body and the mind. (تدريب غير معدود)



Lesson 9 (AB) P. 126 - 127

A.p126/ Write these sentences as reported speech.

اكتب الجمل التالية بحالة الكلام منقول (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

Example. Take three pills a day for two weeks. The doctor told me- The doctor told me **to take three pills a day for two weeks.**

1. Show me your driving licence. The police officer told me

- The police officer told me **to show him my driving licence.**

2. Stand by the tree and smile. The photographer asked me

- The photographer asked me **to stand by the tree and smile.**

3. Don't swim at the north end of the beach. The lifeguard

- The lifeguard **told me not to swim at the north end of the beach.**

4. Can you come to the shops with me? My little sister

- My little sister **asked me to go to the shops with her.**

5. Keep your eye on the ball. The tennis coach

- The tennis coach **told me to keep my eye on the ball.**

6. Please use the stairs because the lift is broken. The hotel receptionist

- The hotel receptionist **asked me to use the stairs because the lift was broken.**

7. Could you spell the street name, please? The taxi driver

- The taxi driver **asked me to spell the street name.**

B.p127/ Complete the sentences with nouns from the box. Make them plural if necessary.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الاسماء التي في الصندوق ، اجعل الاسماء جمع عند الضرورة

شعرة ، شعر / hair كوب ، زجاج / glass تمرين ، تدريب / exercise قهوة ، بُن coffee
 عمل جهد بدني ، عمل أدبي / work وقت ، مرة / time غرفة ، مكان / room جريدة ، ورق paper

1. A cola and two, please. **coffees** C
2. Careful! There's broken on the floor. **glass** U
3. He phoned ten in one day! **times** C
4. I just haven't got to help you today. **time** U
5. I'd love a of orange juice. **glass** C
6. Physical is good for the body and the mind. **exercise** U
7. The in this unit are more difficult than usual. **exercises** C
8. My house has got five **rooms** C
9. The printer has run out of **paper** U
10. There's a on your jacket. Apart from that, you look perfect! **hair** C
11. I need to make some for all these new records I bought yesterday. **room** U
12. There's an interesting article in today's **paper** C
13. I've got some to do tonight so I can't go out. **work** U
14. They grow a lot of in Brazil. **coffee** U
15. Your will look lovely with creamy conditioner. **hair** U
16. Shakespeare's are the most famous in the English language. **works** C



U6: Round up (SB) P. 79 لاطلاع

Revision (AB) P. 128 - 129

A.p128/ Complete the sentences from the words in the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

gallery معرض / exhibition معرض / forecast النشرة الجوية / fiction خيال / interrupt يقطع / offer يقدم
 realistic واقعي / advise ينصح / improve يتطور ، يتحسن / romantic رومانسي / Chat show برنامج حوارى
 poisonous سامة / opera اوپرا / editor رئيس التحرير / whether فيما لو / effects تاثيرات / horror رعب

1. We saw her paintings in an art gallery
2. There's an of old Islamic art at the museum. exhibition
3. The weather said it would be windy today. forecast
4. Space Wars - the Next Galaxy is a science film. fiction
5. Don't me when I'm speaking! interrupt
6. He's very lazy. He didn't to help. offer
7. It's a very film. You feel that you are really in the ship in a storm! realistic
8. Do you me to get a new computer, then? advise
9. I practise a lot, but my tennis playing doesn't improve
10. It's a love story - a film. romantic
11. A TV programme with a presenter talking to guests. Chat show
12. This snake is dangerous - its bite is very poisonous
13. They watch the same soap every night on TV. opera
14. The boss in a newspaper office. editor
15. She asked I was all right. whether
16. The special in that film are fantastic! effects
17. It's a film, full of ghosts and monsters. horror



B.p129/ Here are some questions and answers from a later part of an interview. Write them as reported speech.

حول الجمل المباشرة التالية الى جمل منقولة

1.

Brian: Did you want to be a professional tennis player? He asked her

- He asked her **whether she had wanted to be a professional tennis player.**

Melissa: At the age of 13, I didn't really think about it. She said that

- She said that **at the age of 13, she hadn't really thought about it.**

2.

Brian: Do you prefer singles or doubles? He asked her

- He asked her **if she preferred singles or doubles.**

Melissa: I like playing both. She said that

- She said that **she liked playing both.**

3.

Brian: When is your next tournament? He asked her

- He asked her **when her next tournament was.**

Melissa: I'm playing in the UK Under-21s in April. She said that

- She said that **she was playing in the UK Under-21s in April.**

4.

Brian: What are your chances of success in that? He asked her

- He asked her **what her chances of success in that were.**

Melissa: I hope to come in the top four. She said that

- She said that **she hoped to come in the top four.**

5.

Brian: When do you practise? He asked her

- He asked her **when she practised.**

Melissa: I do a couple of hours every morning. She said that

- She said that **she did a couple of hours every morning.**

6.

Brian: Have you played any other sports? He asked her

- He asked her **if she had played any other sports.**

Melissa: At school, I tried swimming and running. She said that

- She said that **at school she had tried swimming and running.**

7.

Brian: Have you got a special ambition? He asked her

- He asked her **if she had got a special ambition.**

Melissa: I want to win Wimbledon, of course! She said that

- She said that **she wanted to win Wimbledon, of course.**



Test (AB) P. 130 - 133

B.p131/ Change the reported questions into direct questions.

حول الاسئلة المنقولة الى اسئلة مباشرة (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

1. He asked her how old she was.
- **How old are you?**
2. He asked her whether she was at university.
- **Are you at university?**
3. He asked if her career was going well.
- **Is your career going well?**
4. He asked her whether her family played tennis.
- **Does your family play tennis?**
5. He asked her how she had learnt to play.
- **How did you learn to play?**
6. He asked her what her parents had said about it.
- **What did your parents say about it?**

C.p131/ Complete the sentences with the newspapers, film and TV words from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق

article مقالة / cartoon رسوم متحركة / designer مصمم / headline عنوان / historical تاريخي / lifestyle نمط الحياة
producer المنتج / realistic واقعي / subeditor محرر فرعي / trailer مقتطف

1. I don't like these programmes - cooking, gardening and so on. **lifestyle**
2. Disney makes lots of films - Mickey Mouse, Donald Duck, Finding Nemo and so on. **cartoon**
3. I don't want to see that film. I saw a for it last week and it looked boring. **trailer**
4. I read an interesting in the newspaper this morning. **article**
5. It's a film, all about the Assyrians in ancient Nineveh. **historical**
6. She's a on a magazine. She makes the pictures and text look good on the page. **designer**
7. He's a on a newspaper, so his spelling and punctuation must be very good. **subeditor**
8. The is the most important person in a film company. **producer**
9. The on the article was SHARK BITES BOAT. **headline**
10. The fire and explosions in the film were so that some people in the cinema screamed! **realistic**



(AB) P. 132 (Satellites) الاقمار الصناعية

Unit

6

D Read the article and choose the best headline. Tick (✓) one box.

1 **Satellite TV - Too much choice?** ☐2 **It's a small world - with satellite TV!** ☐3 **The technology of satellite TV is developing** ☐4 **THE ARAB WORLD BROUGHT CLOSER TOGETHER BY SATELLITE TV** ☐

From our media correspondent
Mariam Azzawi

In many parts of the world – the Middle East, China and Europe, for example – satellite dishes on roofs or in gardens are a common sight. Programmes in different languages from countries all over the world can be seen on one TV set. Because we are used to this, it is easy to forget that it is quite a new thing.

How long have we had satellite TV? Well, let's go back to the beginning of the story. You could say that it all started when the Russians sent the first satellite into space – the Sputnik in 1957. That was an experiment to test the technology. It went round and round the Earth, not doing much.

The first communication satellites were launched in 1963, but these also moved round the Earth. That is not good for communication – you

can use the satellite for a few hours and then it disappears. Two years later, the problem was solved. *Early Bird* (correct name *Intelsat 1*) went round the Earth at the same speed as the Earth itself goes round, so it appeared to stay still. The distance of *Early Bird* from the Earth was 37,000 km – the same as today's communication satellites.

At first, these satellites were used by TV companies to send news and sport programmes long distances, for example, across the Atlantic. People in their homes continued to receive their TV in the normal way, with an aerial.

In the early 1980s, people started to get satellite dishes at home and to receive programmes from satellite TV stations. People soon understood the great advantages of this system. With satellites, you can receive TV programmes in the middle of the desert, in the mountains, or on small,

faraway islands. You can get your programmes from stations in other countries. As a result, more people can receive TV and everyone gets more choice.

Arabs living in London, for example, can receive lots of Arab satellite stations. This means they can keep in touch with news and culture from home. People in China can get news from international TV companies, not just their own government station. Viewers all over the world can watch Al-Iraqiya. If you are studying Spanish, English or Chinese, television is a wonderful way to learn the language.

Satellites have changed the way we watch television. They have opened up the world and brought people closer together. They may be a new technology, but they are going to be with us for a very long time.



Satellites الأقمار الصناعية

2 قطعة الوحدة السادسة

1. When were the first communication satellites launched? متى أطلقت أول الأقمار الصناعية
- They were launched in 1963. تم إطلاقها في عام 1963 ميلادي
2. What is Early Bird, and what problem did it solve? ما هو "إيرلي بيرد" ، وما المشكلة التي حلها؟
- It is a communication satellite. This satellite went at the same speed as the Earth and improved the communications from the satellite. إنه قمر صناعي ، انطلق هذا القمر بنفس سرعة الأرض ، وحسّن الاتصالات عبره
3. What were these first satellites used for? فيما استخدمت هذه الأقمار الأولى
- They were used to send TV programmes long distances. استخدمت لإرسال البرامج التلفزيونية لمسافات طويلة
4. Which advantages did the satellite dishes offer? ما مزايا أطباق الأقمار الصناعية
- People could receive TV programmes in remote locations around the world. أصبح بإمكان الناس استقبال البرامج التلفزيونية في المناطق النائية حول العالم
5. Why have satellites changed the way we watch television? لماذا غيرت الأقمار الصناعية طريقة مشاهدتنا للتلفزيون
- Satellites opened up the world and brought people closer together. فتحت الأقمار الصناعية العالم وقربت الناس من بعضهم البعض

F.p133/ Complete the missing letters of the following words.

اكمل الحروف المفقودة للكلمات التالية (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

1. W _ _ _ r f _ _ _ t	Weather forecast	نشرة جوية
2. C _ _ _ _ n	Cartoon	رسوم متحركة
3. H _ _ _ _ e	Headline	عنوان
4. S _ _ _ _ e f _ _ _ _ n	Science fiction	خيال علمي
5. I _ _ _ _ _ w	Interview	مقابلة
6. F _ _ m r _ _ _ w	Film review	مراجعة وتقييم فلم
7. M _ _ _ _ m	Museum	متحف
8. E _ _ _ _ _ _ _ n	Exhibition	معرض

تمرين (E) ص 133. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

نهاية الوحدة السادسة

النجاح هو محصلة اجتهادات صغيرة تتراكم يوماً بعد يوم



UNIT SEVEN / الوحدة السابعة

U7: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 82 - 83 (All the rooms are made of ice)

كل الغرف مصنوعة من الثلج

المبني للمجهول Passive voice

ملاحظات هامة تنطبق على كل انواع المبني للمجهول:

- نستخدم المبني للمجهول عندما لانعرف او ليس من الضروري ان نعرف من الذي قام بالفعل حيث يكون التركيز على الحدث.
- في كل صيغ المبني للمجهول نستخدم (افعال الكينونة والتصريف الثالث) كأساس في تكوين جملة المبني للمجهول.
- في كل صيغ المبني للمجهول (نقدّم المفعول به) الى بداية الجملة و (نحذف الفاعل) ، لكن اذا اردنا ان نذكر الفاعل نضعه في نهاية الجملة مسبقا بكلمة (by) اما بالنسبة للمفعول به في جملة المبني للمعلوم نجده بعد الفعل.

أولاً: المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط (Present simple)

1. العلامات الدالة على المضارع البسيط هي (every / each / always / usually / often / these days) او عدم وجود فعل مساعد في جملة المبني للمعلوم وفعلها مصدر مجرد او منتهي (s / es).
2. نستخدم (is) للمفرد و (are) للجمع وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + p.p + (is / are) + مفعول به

Ex1: Ahmed teaches history every day. (Passive) حول الجملة الى المبني للمجهول

- History **is taught** every day.

Ex2: Ali reads two stories each night. (Passive)

- Two stories **are read** each night.- Two stories **are read** each night **by Ali**.

Ex3: (Egypt / are / in / used / coins / these). (Unscramble these words to make passive sentence)

- These coins **are used** in Egypt.

Ex4: The loan (pay back) with interest at the end of the year. (Passive)

- The loan **is paid** back with interest at the end of the year.

Ex5: The hotel owns this beach. (Passive)

- This beach **is owned** by the hotel.Ex6: Mobile phones by millions of people these days. (is bought / **are bought**)

Ex7: The magazine (publish) every month. (Correct the verb to make passive)

- The magazine **is published** every month.

Ex8: Bank statements (send) at the end of each month. (Correct the verb to make passive)

- Bank statements **are sent** at the end of each month.

Ex9: The money in a bank account (use) in many ways. (Present passive)

- The money in a bank account **is used** in many ways.

ثانياً: المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط (Past simple)

1. العلامات الدالة على الماضي البسيط هي (1990 / yesterday / ago / last) او عدم وجود فعل مساعد في جملة المبني للمعلوم وفعلها ماضي.

2. نستخدم (was) للمفرد و (were) للجمع وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + p.p + (was / were) + مفعول به

Ex10: A girl at my school wrote this story.

- This story **was written**.
- This story **was written by a girl at my school**.

Ex11: Somebody took my wallet last week. (Change into passive)

- My wallet **was taken** last week.

Ex12: Somebody stole my wallet last week. (Rewrite in the Passive form)

- My wallet **was stolen** last week.

Ex13: (wallet / week / was / my / last / stolen). (Unscramble these words to make passive)

- My wallet **was stolen** last week.

Ex14: Somebody left these books in the classroom. (Passive form)

- These books **were left** in the classroom.

Ex15: The previous owner cut down the trees. (Rewrite in the passive)

- The trees **were cut down** by the previous owner.

Ex16: (by / The / down / the / previous / owner / were / trees / cut).

(Put the words in the correct order to make a passive form)

- The trees **were cut down** by the previous owner.

Ex17: (was / delivered / when / mail / the / ?) (Re order correctly to make a passive question)

- When **was the mail delivered**?

Ex18: The police found fingerprints at the crime scene. (Change into passive)

- Fingerprints **were found** at the crime scene.

Ex19: Yesterday a message (displayed / **was displayed**) on the screen.

Ex20: My father wrote this letter. (Rewrite in the Passive form)

- This letter **was written** by my father.

Ex21: They signed the cheque last week. (Put the sentence into passive)

- The cheque **was signed** last week.

Ex22: My uncle deposited the money last week. (Rewrite in the Passive form)

- The money **was deposited** last week.

Ex23: (a last restaurant month opened new was). (Unscramble these words to make passive)

- A new restaurant **was opened** last month.

Ex24: The business (started / **was started**) by two brothers two years ago.

Ex25: Was the information (send / **sent**) to you by mail last week?



ثالثاً: المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع المستمر (Present continuous)

1. العلامات الدالة على المضارع المستمر هي:

(today / at the moment / at the present time / now / Look! / Listen! / Be quiet! / keep quiet!) او وجود فعل مساعد (is / am / are) في جملة المبني للمعلوم وفعلها مستمر (ينتهي بـ ing).

2. نستخدم (is) للمفرد و (are) للجمع وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + p.p + (is / are) + being + مفعول به

Ex26: They are building a lot of new flats at the moment. (Passive)

- A lot of new flats **are being built** at the moment.

Ex27: Somebody is cleaning the room right now. (Rewrite in the Passive form)

- The room **is being cleaned** right now.

Ex28: They are presenting the new play right now. The new play (Complete in the passive form)

- The new play **is being presented right now**.

Ex29: My bedroom (paint), so I'm sleeping in the living room. (Put the verb in the passive form)

- My bedroom **is being painted**, so I'm sleeping in the living room.Ex30: My bedroom (**is being painted** / is painted), so I'm sleeping in the living room.Ex31: The ship (is repaired / **is being repaired**) at the moment.

Ex32: (renovated / bank / is / The / being). (Unscramble these words to make passive)

- The bank **is being renovated**.

Ex33: They are renovating the bank. (Passive voice)

- The bank **is being renovated**.

Ex34: The machine (repair) at the moment. (Correct the verb to make passive voice)

- The machine **is being repaired** at the moment.**رابعاً: المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي المستمر (Past continuous)**

1. العلامات الدالة على الماضي المستمر هي (while / when) او وجود فعل مساعد (was / were) في جملة المبني للمعلوم وفعلها مستمر (ينتهي بـ ing).

2. نستخدم (was) للمفرد و (were) للجمع وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + p.p + (was / were) + being + مفعول به

Ex35: My mother was cleaning the room, so I waited outside. (Passive)

- The room **was being cleaned**, so I waited outside.

Ex36: Somebody was opening the gates when we arrived. (Rewrite in the passive form)

- The gates **were being opened** when we arrived.

Ex37: The women were cleaning all the curtains. (Rewrite in the passive form)

- All the curtains **were being cleaned** by the women.

Ex38: I used my father's car while my car (repair). (Correct to make passive)

- I used my father's car while my car **was being repaired**.

Ex39: Were the cheques (be) sent to the wrong address? (Put the verb in the correct form)

- Were the cheques **being** sent to the wrong address?

خامساً: المبني للمجهول في زمن المضارع التام البسيط (Present perfect simple)

1. العلامات الدالة على المضارع التام هي (since / for / yet / already) او وجود فعل مساعد (has / have) في جملة المبني للمعلوم وفعلها بصيغة التصريف الثالث.
2. نستخدم (has) للمفرد و (have) للجمع وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + p.p + (has / have) + been + مفعول به

Ex40: The police have already caught the thief. (Passive voice)

- The thief **has already been caught**.

Ex41: Somebody has stolen my wallet. (Passive)

- My wallet **has been stolen**.

Ex42: Many wind turbines (**have** / has) been built in Europe.

Ex43: (have / stairs / avoid / been / The / accidents / to / repaired)

(Put these words in the correct order to make passive sentence)

- The stairs **have been repaired** to avoid accidents.

سادساً: المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي التام البسيط (Past perfect simple)

1. العلامات الدالة على الماضي التام هي وجود الفعل المساعد (had) في جملة المبني للمعلوم وفعلها بصيغة التصريف الثالث.
2. نستخدم (had) للمفرد والجمع وحسب القاعدة التالية:

تكملة + p.p + had + been + مفعول به

Ex44: They had painted the house. (Passive)

- The house **had been painted**.

Ex45: We had done the work well. (Passive)

- The work **had been done** well.

Ex46: He had fixed the broken chair. (Passive)

- The broken chair **had been fixed**.

Ex47: They had renovated the bank. (Passive)

- The bank **had been renovated**.

سابعاً: المبني للمجهول في زمن المستقبل البسيط (Future simple)

1. العلامات الدالة على المستقبل هي (next / tomorrow / will / soon / later / in the future / if).
2. قاعدة المبني للمجهول في زمن المستقبل البسيط هي:

تكملة + p.p + will be + مفعول به

Ex48: Somebody will grade our homework over the weekend. (Rewrite in the passive form)

- Our homework **will be graded** over the weekend.

Ex49: If birds fly into wind turbines, they (kill). (Correct to make passive sentence)

- If birds fly into wind turbines, they **will be killed**.

Ex50: The decision (make) tomorrow by the bank manager. (Correct to make passive sentence)

- The decision **will be made** tomorrow by the bank manager.

Ex51: be sold The end house will before the year the of. (Put in the correct order to make passive)

- The house **will be sold** before the end of the year.

Ex52: Somebody will pay the bill tomorrow. (Rewrite the sentence in the passive form)

- The bill **will be paid** tomorrow.



ثامناً: المبني للمجهول مع الافعال الناقصة (Modal verbs)

1. العلامات الدالة هنا هي الافعال الناقصة ومنها (can / could / should / may / would...).
2. القاعدة كالتالي:

تكملة + p.p + be + (can , can't / should , may ...) + مفعول به

Ex53: They should stop smoking completely. (Passive)

- Smoking **should be stopped** completely.

Ex54: We can see bats at night. (Passive)

- Bats **can be seen** at night.

Ex55: Hedgehogs might (eat) by foxes. (Correct to make passive)

- Hedgehogs **might be eaten** by foxes.

Ex56: Salim can't read the story. (Passive)

- The story **can't be read**.

3. اذا بدأت الجملة بأداة سؤال ، عند التحويل الى المبني للمجهول نكتب اداة السؤال في بداية الجملة كما هي وبعدها نضع الفعل الناقص وبعدها المفعول به وفي نهاية الجملة نضع (علامة استفهام) كما في القاعدة التالية:

? + p.p + be + المفعول به + (can / should / may ...) + اداة السؤال

Ex57: Where can you find flamingos? (Passive) حول الى المبني للمجهول

- **Where** can flamingos **be found**?

Ex58: How can they tame wild animals? (Passive)

- **How** can wild animals **be tamed**?

تاسعاً: المصدر المبني للمجهول (Passive infinitive)

1. نستخدم المصدر المبني للمجهول عندما نريد التركيز على متلقي او مستقبل الحدث او الفعل حيث يكون الفاعل غير مهم.
2. القاعدة كالتالي:

to be + p.p + (فعل es,s / فعل مجرد) + مفعول به

Ex59: I like to encourage people. (Passive: to be)

- People like **to be encouraged**.

Ex60: You have to clean the house. (Passive: to be)

- The house **has to be cleaned**.

Ex61: I like to encourage people. (Passive: to be)

- People like **to be encouraged**.

Ex62: You need to do this immediately. (Passive: to be)

- This needs **to be done** immediately.

Ex63: You need to do the homework. (Passive: to be)

- The homework **needs to be done**.

Ex64: I don't like to abuse people. (Passive: to be)

- People don't like **to be abused**.

Ex65: The teacher is to mark the exam. (Passive: to be)

- The exam is **to be marked**.



Lesson 1 (AB) P. 134 – 135

A.p134/ Complete the sentences with the passive form of the verbs and tenses in brackets.

اكمل الجمل التالية باستخدام صيغة المبني للمجهول للأفعال التي بين الأقواس

1. Millions of text messages (send) ... on phones every day. (present simple) **are sent**
2. These beautiful gardens (build) ... only two months ago. (past simple) **were built**
3. Breakfast (serve) ... at 8 o'clock every morning. (present simple) **is served**
4. Your hair (cut) ... when the hairdresser comes back from her break. (future simple) **will be cut**
5. The homework (assign) ... a week ago and I completely forgot to do it. (past simple) **was assigned**
6. ... the dogs (feed) ... twice a day? (present simple) **Are / fed**
7. Dinner (order) ... more than an hour ago, I'm hungry! (past simple) **was ordered**
8. The students (teach) ... the new English lesson tomorrow morning. (future simple) **will be taught**

B.p135/ Complete the text with the past simple passive form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل النص التالي باستخدام صيغة المبني للمجهول في زمن الماضي البسيط للأفعال التي بين الأقواس

Last year, I (invite) **was invited** by some friends to go on holiday with them in Thailand. It was the kind of holiday where everything (arrange) **was arranged** by the tour company. We (meet) **were met** at Bangkok Airport and we (take) **were taken** to a hotel with a beautiful roof garden. The next day, we (pick up) **were picked up** by bus from the hotel and we (drive) **were driven** to the Grand Palace. After that, we (give) **were given** a boat tour of the canals. It was fantastic. Every day, we (serve) **were served** delicious food in the hotel. After a week in Bangkok, we (fly) **were flown** to the island of Samui to enjoy a few days at the beach.

HW.p135/ Use the prompts to write sentence in the passive. Choose the correct tense each time. For the future tens, use *will*.استخدم المعطيات التالية لكتابة جمل مبنية للمجهول ، اختر الزمن الصحيح في كل مرة. بالنسبة للمستقبل المبني للمجهول استخدم *will***Example.** Where / best dates / grow?- Where **are the best dates grown**?

1. A lot of cars / make / in Japan nowadays.

- A lot of cars **are made** in Japan nowadays.

2. Where / party / hold / next time?

- Where **will the party be held** next time?

3. I'm afraid / room / not clean / yesterday.

- I'm afraid the room **was not cleaned** yesterday.

4. I / often / tell / that I look older than 18.

- I **am often told** that I look older than 18.

5. These days, our rubbish / always collect / on Monday mornings.

- These days, our rubbish **is always collected** on Monday mornings.

6. The swimming pool / repair / next month.

- The swimming pool **will be repaired** next month.

7. Their car / steal / two weeks ago.

- Their car **was stolen** two weeks ago.

8. Oranges / not grow / in Britain. It's not hot enough.

- Oranges **are not grown** in Britain. It's not hot enough.

9. What / we / give for homework yesterday? I didn't write it down.

- What **were we given** for homework yesterday? I didn't write it down.

U7: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 84 (I think you should reconsider) يجب عليك إعادة النظر

Prefixes and suffixes البادئات واللاحق

أولاً: البادئات (Prefixes) وهي مقاطع من الحروف توضع في بداية بعض الصفات فتعطيها معنى معاكس.

1. البادئة (il) توضع امام الصفات التي تبدأ بالحرف (l) مثل:

legal قانوني

illegal غير قانوني

2. البادئة (ir) توضع امام الصفات التي تبدأ بالحرف (r) مثل:

regular منتظم

irregular غير منتظم

responsible مسؤول

irresponsible غير مسؤول

3. البادئة (im) توضع امام الصفات التي تبدأ بالحروف (m / p) مثل:

moral اخلاقي

immoral غير اخلاقي

mortal زائل ، فاني

immortal خالد ، ابدى

material مادي

immaterial غير مادي

mature ناضج

immature غير ناضج

polite مؤدب

impolite غير مؤدب

practical عملي

impractical غير عملي

possible ممكن

impossible مستحيل

perfect مثالي

imperfect غير مثالي

patient صبور

impatient غير صبور

4. البادئة (in) توضع امام الصفات التي تبدأ بالحروف (c / d / e / s) مثل:

correct صحيح

incorrect غير صحيح

sensitive حساس

insensitive غير حساس

convenient مناسب

inconvenient غير مناسب

complete مكتمل

incomplete غير مكتمل

dependent غير مستقل

independent مستقل

decisive حاسم

indecisive غير حاسم

efficient كفوء

inefficient غير كفوء

expensive غالي

inexpensive رخيص

sufficient كافي

insufficient غير كافي

5. البادئة (un) توضع امام الصفات التي تبدأ بالحروف (i / u / f / h / a) مثل:

happy سعيد

unhappy حزين

healthy صحي

unhealthy غير صحي

fashionable عصري

unfashionable غير عصري

fair عادل

unfair غير عادل

attractive جذاب

unattractive غير جذاب

interesting ممتع

uninteresting غير ممتع

fortunate محظوظ

unfortunate غير محظوظ

intelligent كفوء

unintelligent غير كفوء

usual اعتيادي

unusual غير اعتيادي

6. الصفات التالية شاذة لاتخضع لقاعدة معينة:

popular شائع ، اجتماعي

unpopular غير شائع ، غير اجتماعي

pleasant لطيف

unpleasant مزعج

pleased مسرور

displeased غير مسرور

formal رسمي

informal غير رسمي



ثانياً: اللواحق (Suffixes) وهي مقاطع من الحروف توضع في نهاية بعض الصفات فتعطيها معنى معاكس.

1. اللاحقة (less) تقلل من قيمة الصفة.

2. اللاحقة (ful) تعطي معنى أقوى للصفة.

useless غير مفيد	useful مفيد
careless غير مبالي	careful حذر
harmless غير ضار	harmful ضار
tasteless لا طعم له	tasteful لذيق
fearless لا يخاف	fearful خائف
powerless عاجز ، ضعيف	powerful قوي
painless غير مؤلم	painful مؤلم
thoughtless عديم التفكير ، طائش	thoughtful عميق التفكير ، وقور

Lesson 2 (AB) P. 136 - 137

B.p136/ Now write the adjectives to complete these sentences. Then write the opposites of the adjectives.

اكتب الصفات لتكمل الجمل التالية ، بعدها اكتب الصفة المعاكسة لهم

الجملة	الصفة	الصفة المعاكسة لها
1. Somebody who doesn't take care is	careless	careful
2. Something which doesn't cause harm is	harmless	harmful
3. Something which doesn't cause pain is	painless	painful
4. Someone who has no power is	powerless	powerful
5. Something which you can't use is	useless	useful
6. Someone who never thinks is	thoughtless	thoughtful
7. Something that has no taste is	tasteless	tasteful
8. Someone who has no fear	fearless	fearful

C.p137/ Make the opposites of these adjectives. Use the prefixes *un-*, *in-* or *im-*.

اجعل الصفات التالية تملك معنى معاكس بأضافة بادئة مناسبة لكل صفة

1. <u>un</u> attractive غير جذاب	8. <u>un</u> interesting ممل ، غير ممتع	15. <u>in</u> sensitive غير حساس
2. <u>in</u> expensive رخيص	9. <u>un</u> pleasant ليس مسروراً	16. <u>in</u> dependent مستقل
3. <u>un</u> healthy غير صحي	10. <u>im</u> practical غير عملي	17. <u>un</u> fortunate غير محظوظ
4. <u>im</u> patient قليل الصبر	11. <u>in</u> decisive متردد	18. <u>im</u> moral غير اخلاقي
5. <u>im</u> possible مستحيل	12. <u>in</u> formal غير رسمي	19. <u>un</u> popular غير محبوب
6. <u>in</u> correct غير صحيح	13. <u>im</u> mature غير ناضج	20. <u>un</u> usual غير اعتيادي
7. <u>un</u> fashionable غير عصري	14. <u>im</u> polite غير مهذب	



E.p137/ Complete the sentences from the adjectives in the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الصفات التي في الصندوق (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

unfortunate غير محظوظ / indecisive غير حاسم ، متردد / impatient غير صبور / impossible مستحيل
unpopular غير محبوب / immature غير ناضج / unusual غير اعتيادي

Example. Both his parents died when he was young and he has very little money.

He has had an life. **unfortunate**

1. He keeps changing his mind. He is very **indecisive**
2. He refused to wait even five minutes. He is terribly **impatient**
3. I couldn't do my Maths homework this week because it was so hard. It was **impossible**
4. People don't like him very much. He is rather **unpopular**
5. She is 18, but she acts like an 8 year old. I think she is very **immature**
6. She isn't like other people. She is a very person. **unusual**

U7: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 85 (Have you ever had your eyes tested?)

هل خضعت للاختبار فحص النظر

الافعال السببية (have / get) Causative verbs

- نستخدم الافعال السببية (have / get) في الجملة عندما يكون فاعل الجملة ليس هو من قام بالعمل ، وإنما يقوم به شخص آخر.
- 1. قاعدة الافعال السببية في زمن المضارع البسيط (Present simple) هي:

تكملة + p.p + مفعول به + (has / gets) + اسم مفرد / he / she / it
تكملة + p.p + مفعول به + (have / get) + اسم جمع / I / we / you / they

Ex1: Every girl in Baghdad **has their ears pierced** here.

Ex2: I always get the car (**washed** / wash) at the garage. I don't like washing it myself.

Ex3: She cuts her hair every month. (Causative: have) استخدم الفعل السببي

- **She has her hair cut every month .**

Ex4: I do my homework every day. (Causative: get)

- **I get my homework done every day.**

Ex5: How often / he / usually / test / his eyes / ? (Causative: have)

- **How often does he usually have his eyes tested?**



2. قاعدة الافعال السببية في زمن الماضي البسيط (Past simple) هي:

تكملة + p.p + مفعول به + (had / got) + فاعل

Ex6: Somebody stole my television. I had my television (steal / stolen).

Ex7: I had my window (break) yesterday. (Correct)

- I had my window broken yesterday.

Ex8: When did you last (had / have) your eyes (test / tested)?

Ex9: When did you get your passport photo (take / took / taken)?

Ex10: Ahmed / fix / his camera / yesterday / ? (Rewrite using the correct form of 'get')

- Did Ahmed get his camera fixed yesterday?

Ex11: She had her picture (take / taken).

Ex12: He got (repaired his car / his car repaired).

3. قاعدة الافعال السببية في زمن المضارع المستمر (Present continuous) هي:

تكملة + p.p + مفعول به + (having / getting) + اسم مفرد + is
تكملة + p.p + مفعول به + (having / getting) + اسم جمع + are
I + am + (having / getting) + مفعول به + p.p + تكملة

Ex13: He is repairing his car now. (Rewrite using the correct form of 'get')

- He is getting his car repaired now.

Ex14: They are painting their house. (Rewrite using the correct form of 'have')

- They are having their house painted.

Ex15: What / she / do / to her house / at the moment / ? (Rewrite using the correct form of 'have')

- What is she having done to her house at the moment?

4. قاعدة الافعال السببية في زمن المضارع التام البسيط (Present perfect simple) هي:

تكملة + p.p + مفعول به + (had / got) + اسم مفرد + has
تكملة + p.p + مفعول به + (had / got) + اسم جمع + have
I / we / you / they

Ex16: He has repaired his car. (Causative: have)

- He has had his car repaired.

Ex17: Have they cleaned their house? (Causative: have)

- Have they had their house cleaned?

Ex18: you / ever / clean / that coat / ? (Causative: get)

- Have you ever got that coat cleaned?



Lesson 3 (AB) P. 138 - 139

HW.p139/ Write questions and answers with the present simple, present continuous, present perfect or past simple of *have something done*.

اكتب اسئلة واجوبة في زمن المضارع البسيط او المضارع المستمر او الماضي البسيط باستخدام الفعل السببي *have*

Example. A. Samira / repair / the car / yet?

- **Has Samira had the car repaired yet?**

B. No, she / repair / it / tomorrow.

- **No, she is having it repaired tomorrow.**

1. Ahmed / fix / his camera yesterday?

A. Did Ahmed have his camera fixed yesterday?

B. No, he didn't.

2. How often / he / usually / test / his eyes?

A. How often does he usually have his eyes tested?

He / usually / test / them / once a year.

B. He usually has them tested once a year.

3. What / she / do / to her house / at the moment?

A. What is she having done to her house at the moment?

At the moment, she / repaint / the sitting room.

B. At the moment, she is having the sitting room repainted.

4. you / ever / clean / that coat?

A. Have you ever had that coat cleaned?

Yes, I / clean / it / last summer.

B. Yes, I had it cleaned last summer.

U7: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 86 (The best of Iraq) افضل ما في العراق

Relative clauses عبارات الوصل

- نستخدم عبارات الوصل لأعطاء معلومات إضافية عن الاسم الموصول.
- تحتوي الجملة الاولى على الاسم الموصول (اسم شخص / اسم شيء / اسم مكان).
- نستخدم ضمائر الوصل (**who / which, that / where / whose**) لربط عبارات الوصل.
- نستخدم ضمير الوصل (**who**) اذا كان (الاسم الموصول) في الجملة الاولى عاقل وفي الجملة الثانية احد الضمانر (**he / she / they / you / we**).
- نستخدم ضمير الوصل (**which / that**) اذا كان (الاسم الموصول) في الجملة الاولى غير عاقل وفي الجملة الثانية (**it**).
- نستخدم ضمير الوصل (**where**) اذا كان (الاسم الموصول) في الجملة الاولى يشير الى مكان.
- نستخدم ضمير الوصل (**whose**) الذي (يشير الى الملكية) اذا كان (الاسم الموصول) في الجملة الاولى عاقل او غير عاقل وفي الجملة الثانية احد الضمانر التملك (**his / her / their / your / our / its**) او (معنى الجملة يشير الى الملكية).



- عند استخدام ضمائر الوصل **نحذف** من الجملة الثانية **الاسم المكرر** او **الضمير** الذي يشير اليه ضمير الوصل وحسب الجدول التالي:

ضمير الوصل	الضمير الذي يجب حذفه من الجملة الثانية
who	he - she - they - you - we
whose	his - her - their - your - our - its
which / that	it - they
where	there

1. اذا كان الاسم الموصول في نهاية الجملة الاولى نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

الجملة 2 بعد حذف الضمير العائد على الاسم + ضمير وصل مناسب + الجملة 1 كاملة

Ex1: That's **the girl**. **She** won the Art prize at school.

(Use a suitable relative pronoun) اربط الجملتين باستخدام ضمير وصل مناسب

- That's the girl **who** won the Art prize at school.

Ex2: I have **a friend**. **He** speaks five languages. (Join. Use: who)

- I have a friend **who** speaks five languages.

Ex3: She's got **a parrot**. **It** can talk. (Join. Use a relative pronoun)

- She's got a parrot **which** can talk.

- She's got a parrot **that** can talk.

Ex4: We visited **the town**. My father was born **there**. (Join. Use a relative pronoun)

- We visited the town **where** my father was born.

Ex5: What's the name of **your friend**? **His** father is a film star.

- What's the name of your friend **whose** father is a film star?

Ex6: They've knocked down **the restaurant**. We had a meal **there** last year. (Use a relative pronoun)

- They've knocked down the restaurant **where** we had a meal last year.

2. اذا كان الاسم الموصول في وسط الجملة الاولى نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

الجملة 2 بعد حذف الضمير العائد على الاسم + تكملة الجملة 1 + ضمير وصل مناسب + الاسم الموصول

ملاحظة: اذا وجدنا امام الاسم الموصول (a / an / his / her / that / this) نحولهم الى (The).

Ex7: I spoke to **a lady** on the phone. **She** told me to call back later. (Join. Use a relative pronoun)

- The lady **who** I spoke to on the phone told me to call back later.

Ex8: I always go to **that garage** for repairs. **It** was closed today. (Join. Use a relative pronoun)

- The garage **that** I always go to for repairs was closed today.

Ex9: I helped **an old man** cross the street. **He** was blind. (Join. Use a relative pronoun)

- The old man **who** I helped cross the street was blind.



3. إذا كان الاسم الموصول في بداية الجملة الأولى نستخدم القاعدة التالية:

تكملة الجملة 1 + الجملة 2 بعد حذف الضمير العائد على الاسم + ضمير وصل مناسب + الاسم الموصول

Ex10: The girl lives in Cairo. She gave me this ring.

- The girl **who** gave me this ring lives in Cairo.

Ex11: The man has just bought a private jet. He lives next door. (Join. Use a relative pronoun)

- The man **who** lives next door has just bought a private jet.

Ex12: Salwa wants to be an interpreter. She speaks three languages.

(Join by using the correct relative pronoun)

- Salwa, **who** speaks three languages, wants to be an interpreter.

Ex13: Bashir is going to buy a car very soon. He passed his driving test last week

(Use the correct relative pronoun to make one sentence)

- Bashir, **who** passed his driving test last week, is going to buy a car very soon.

Ex14: My friend Adam caught three huge fish yesterday. He loves fishing.

(Combine the two sentences with a relative pronoun)

- My friend Adam, **who** loves fishing, caught three huge fish yesterday.

Ex15: My father buys two or three new books a week. He loves reading. (Join. Use a relative pronoun)

- My father, **who** loves reading, buys two or three new books a week.

4. عبارات الوصل تقسم الى قسمين: (عبارات معرفة defining clauses) و (عبارات غير معرفة non-defining clauses).

5. العبارات المعرفة تعطينا معلومات (ضرورية لا يمكن حذفها) عن الاسم الموصول ، اما العبارات الغير معرفة تعطينا معلومات اضافية (غير ضرورية ويمكن حذفها) عن الاسم الموصول.

- That's the girl **who** won the Art prize at school. (a defining clause معرفة عبارة)

- That's the girl **جملة غير مكتملة المعنى**

- My parents, who met at university, both work in the same office. (a non defining clause معرفة عبارة غير معرفة)

- My parents both work in the same office. **جملة صحيحة ومكتملة المعنى**

6. يمكننا ان نحذف ضمير الوصل (who , which , where ...) ولانحتاج اليه عندما يكون موقعه في محل

المفعول به ، اي عندما نجد ضمائر الاسم الموصول في الجملة الثانية بمحل مفعول به مثل (them , her , his , it).

ضمائر المفعول به عادة تكون في وسط او نهاية الجملة (بعد الفعل الرئيسي).

Ex16: Do you remember the beach party? We had it last summer.

- Do you remember the beach party (which/that) we had last summer? (اختيارية يمكن حذف ضمائر الوصل)

Ex17: I've just heard from the boy. We met him in Beirut.

- I've just heard from the boy (who) we met in Beirut.

Ex18: Have you bought the bracelet? We saw it yesterday.

- Have you bought the bracelet (which/that) we saw yesterday?



7. لا يمكننا ان نحذف ضمير الوصل (who , which , where ...) بل نحتاج اليه عندما يكون موقعه في محل فاعل ، اي عندما نجد ضمائر الاسم الموصول في الجملة الثانية بمحل فاعل مثل (He , she , they , it). ضمائر الفاعل عادة تكون في بداية الجملة.

Ex19: I don't like films. Films make me cry.

- I don't like films which/that make me cry. هنا لا يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل لأنه أصبح فاعل الجملة الموصولة

Ex20: The new teacher comes from Jordan. He started at our school this week.

- The new teacher who started at our school this week comes from Jordan.

Ex21: What did you think of the musician? He was playing the trumpet.

- What did you think of the musician who was playing the trumpet?

Ex22: He is somebody. He works in my father's shop.

- He is somebody who works in my father's shop.

Lesson 4 (AB) P. 140 - 141

A.p140/ Join these sentences with *where* or *whose*.

اربط الجمل التالية بأستخدام *where* , *whose*

Example. Let's go to that beach you can do windsurfing. **where**

1. Do you know t hat girl in our school father is a football coach? **whose**

2. I've never met anyone hair is as long as my sister's. **whose**

3. Do you know a good jeweller's I can get my ears pierced? **where**

4. Karen is the person parents looked after me in London. **whose**

5. Have you been to that new shop you can buy delicious Belgian chocolates? **where**

6. Do you know a place I can have my shoes repaired? **where**

7. Ben is the friend of mine dog is really friendly. **whose**

8. That is the bakery you can buy the best croissants in town. **where**

9. My grandmother lives in the neighbourhood my best friend goes to school. **where**



B.p141/ Join these sentences using *who, which, where* or *whose*.

اربط الجمل التالية باستخدام *who, which, where, whose*

1. Halwa is a new magazine. It has articles about food and fashion.
- Halwa is a new magazine **which/that** has articles about food and fashion.
2. That man is a Lebanese TV presenter. His show is very popular.
- That man is a Lebanese TV presenter **whose** show is very popular.
3. Ishtar Gate is a very expensive shop. You can buy wedding presents there.
- Ishtar Gate is a very expensive shop **where** you can buy wedding presents.
4. There's a boy in our class. His brother won a gold medal in the Asian Games.
- There's a boy in our class **whose** brother won a gold medal in the Asian games.
5. Iraqi Tours has excellent tour guides. They really know the country well.
- Iraqi Tours has excellent tour guides **who** really know the country well.
6. The Rokia 22 is an inexpensive mobile phone. It takes good photos.
- The Rokia 22 is an inexpensive mobile phone **which/that** takes good photos.
7. There's a lovely café overlooking the river. We could meet there for a coffee.
- There's a lovely café overlooking the river **where** we could meet for a coffee.
8. Do you know my friend Salwa? Her brother has a red sports car.
- Do you know my friend Salwa **whose** brother has a red sports car?

HW.p141/ Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

اكمل الجمل التالية بأفكارك الخاصة

1. I like people who are honest.
2. I don't like people who tell lies.
3. I like places that are quiet and peaceful.
4. The first thing that I saw/heard/did/ate this morning was a beautiful sunrise.
5. One thing that I enjoy/hate/often do is reading books.
6. I really enjoyed the restaurant where they served delicious pasta.
7. The other day I met the girl whose sister is my best friend.

U7: Lesson 5 (SB) P. 87 (Use blue or black ink) استخدم الحبر الأزرق أو الأسود

Lesson 5 (AB) P. 142 - 143 للاطلاع



Telegram : alieng93



علي يحيى مدرس انكليزي



U7: Lesson 6 (SB) P. 88 - 89 (Fifteen questions must be answered)

يجب الإجابة على خمسة عشر سؤال

Unit

7

Lesson 6
AB 144-145

Fifteen questions must be answered

- 1 Read the article. Find these words. If you can't work out the meanings, look them up in a dictionary.

contestant	suspense	audience	exported	round
increasingly	guaranteed	lifeline	winnings	
version	time limit	anxiety	indecision	educational

WHO WANTS TO BE A MILLIONAIRE?

'Is that your final answer?' Jeremy Clarkson asks in English.

'Jawaab nihaa'ee?' asks George Kurdahi in Arabic.

'Yes, my final answer,' the contestant says weakly and waits to be told the result. There's a pause, then the music starts. The suspense builds. A few seconds later, the contestant and the audience know if money has been won or lost.



Do you recognize the TV programme that is being described? It is called *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?* and it is the world's most popular game show. It was invented in Britain in 1998 and was taken to the United States a year later. In 1999, it was being shown six nights a week on the American channel ABC and now it has been exported to 160 other countries, including Pakistan, Indonesia and Turkey.

At the beginning of each show, ten contestants take part in a first round called 'Fastest Finger First'. They are asked to put four answers in a particular order. The quickest contestant to get the order right is allowed to sit in the chair and play the main game.

The contestant is asked increasingly difficult questions. Each time, the correct answer must be chosen from four possibilities. Money is won for each correct answer. If contestants answer incorrectly, they usually lose all the money they have won.



Unit

7

Lesson 6
AB 144-145

However, there are some amounts of money that are guaranteed – £1,000 and an amount the contestant chooses to guarantee (safety net) throughout the game, provided they answer the question for that amount of money correctly.

If a contestant is not sure of the answer, they are allowed to use one of three 'lifelines', but each

lifeline can be used once only. They can phone a friend, ask the audience, or ask for a 50:50. When a contestant asks for a 50:50, two incorrect answers will be taken away by the computer and two answers will be left. One of these is right and one is wrong. When all three lifelines have been used, the game gets more difficult, but contestants don't have to answer a question if it is too difficult. Instead, they can keep their winnings and stop playing. To win a million, a total of 15 questions must be answered.

In Britain, by 2005 the top prize of a million pounds had been won six times. The Arabic version of the game was first shown in November 2000 and already six contestants have won the top prize of one million Saudi riyals.

When Jeremy Clarkson took over from Chris Tarrant, who had hosted the UK show for 16 years, the first episode was watched by over five million viewers. What makes the show so popular? Firstly, there is no time limit for answering the questions. This means that a lot of suspense is built up while the contestant thinks about the answer. Another reason is that viewers always imagine they are playing the game. While they watch, they decide which of the four answers they would choose and they often share the contestant's anxiety and indecision. Finally, the show is quite educational. At the end of each show, most people watching it have learnt at least two or three new facts.



Who Wants To Be A Millionaire? من يريد ان يصبح مليونير

قطعة الوحدة السابعة 1

1. What kind of TV show is 'Who Wants To Be a Millionaire'?

أي نوع من البرامج التلفزيونية هو "من يريد أن يصبح مليونير"

- It is a TV game show. هو برنامج مسابقات تلفزيوني

2. How many contestants take part in the first round? كم عدد المتسابقين المشاركين في الجولة الأولى

- Ten contestants take part in the first round. عشرة متسابقين

3. How many possible answers are there to each question? كم عدد الإجابات الممكنة لكل سؤال

- Four. أربعة اجابات

4. Explain this sentence in your own words: Some amounts of money are guaranteed - £1,000 and a safety net. أشرح هذه الجملة بأسلوبك الخاص: بعض المبالغ مضمونة 1000 جنيه إسترليني وشبكة الأمان

- These amounts of money cannot be lost. If a contestant wins either £1,000 or another amount he or she chooses to guarantee (safety net), he or she keeps it even if the next answer is wrong.

لا يمكن خسارة هذه المبالغ. إذا فاز أحد المتسابقين بـ 1000 جنيه إسترليني أو أي مبلغ آخر يختار ضمانه (شبكة أمان)، فإنه يحتفظ به حتى لو كانت إجابته التالية خاطئة

5. When can a contestant use a lifeline? متى يمكن للمتسابق استخدام وسائل المساعدة

- Contestants can use a lifeline when they are not sure of answers.

يمكن للمتسابقين استخدام وسائل المساعدة عندما لا يكونون متأكدين من الإجابات

Lesson 6 (AB) P. 144 - 145

تمرين (A) ص 144. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

B.p144/ Find a word in the text on pages 88 and 89 that means:

جد كلمات من النص الموجود في كتاب الطالب ص 88 و 89 والتي تعني التالي

1. someone who takes part in a competition. contestant متسابق

2. taken to other countries. exported تم تصديره

3. more and more. increasingly بشكل متزايد

4. what someone has won. winnings مكاسب ، ارباح

5. people who watch a show on TV. viewers مشاهدين

C.p144/ Write the correct tense name of the passive forms used in these examples.

اكتب اسم زمن المبني للمجهول المستخدم في الجمل التالية

modal verb المبني للمجهول مع الأفعال الناقصة present continuous المستمر

past continuous المبني للمجهول مع الماضي المستمر present perfect التام

past perfect المبني للمجهول مع الماضي التام

Example. Do you recognize the programme that is being described? present continuous

1. In 1999 it was being shown six nights a week. past continuous

2. And now it has been exported to 160 other countries. present perfect

3. By 2005, the top prize of a million pounds had been won six times. past perfect

4. Each lifeline can be used once only. modal present



D.p145/ Rewrite the sentences putting the underlined verbs in the passive.

اعد كتابة الجمل التالية واضعاً الافعال التي تحتها خط بزمان المبني للمجهول

Example. They have exported the show to 70 other countries.

- The show **has been exported** to 70 other countries.

1. People have won the top prize twice.

- The top prize **has been won** twice.

2. They were showing it six nights a week in America in 1999.

- It **was being shown** six nights a week in America in 1999.

3. They are making a new series of the show at the moment.

- A new series of the show **is being made** at the moment.

4. When we got to the airport, we found that they had cancelled the flight.

- When we got to the airport, we found that the flight **had been cancelled**.

5. They should spend more money on health and education.

- More money **should be spent** on health and education.

6. You can't wash this jacket. You have to dry-clean it.

- This jacket **can't be washed**. It **has to be dry-cleaned**.

HW.p145/ Write a description of your favourite TV show in about 100 words.

اكتب انشاء عن برنامجك التلفزيوني المفضل

(انشاء الوحدة السابعة) 1

MY favourite TV show برنامجي التلفزيوني المفضل

I watched a good show last night. It was called 'How to be fit and healthy?' I have learnt that if we want to be fit and healthy, we need to take regular exercise.

There are many ways to do exercise. For example, we can go to a gym, we can go walking or cycling, or we can take up a sport. Before we begin, there are some things we should think about.

We need to find something that we are fairly sure we will enjoy doing. If we don't enjoy the activity, we will give it up in a few weeks. The show was really useful.

لقد شاهدت برنامجاً جيداً الليلة الماضية. كان يدعى "كيف تكون رشييقاً وبصحة جيدة؟" لقد تعلمت أنه إذا أردنا أن نكون رشيقيين وصحيين ، فنحن بحاجة إلى ممارسة التمارين الرياضية بانتظام.

هناك طرق عديدة لممارسة الرياضة. على سبيل المثال ، يمكننا الذهاب إلى صالة الألعاب الرياضية ، أو المشي أو ركوب الدراجات ، أو ممارسة الرياضة. قبل أن نبدأ ، هناك بعض الأشياء التي يجب أن نفكر فيها.

نحن بحاجة إلى العثور على شيء نحن على يقين من أننا سنستمتع به. إذا لم نستمتع بالنشاط ، فسوف نترك التمرين في غضون أسابيع قليلة. البرنامج كان مفيداً حقاً.



U7: Lesson 7 (SB) P. 90 (I've got good news) لدي اخبار جيدة

Lesson 7 (AB) P. 146 - 147

A.p146/ Which of the adjectives below describe positive feelings and which describe negative feelings? Write P (positive) or N (negative) next to each one.

أي من الصفات التالية توصف الشعور الايجابي وأيها توصف الشعور السلبي ، اكتب P للصفات الايجابية و N للصفات السلبية

anxious N	قلق	embarrassed N	محرج	relaxed P	مسترخي
ashamed N	خجول	energetic P	نشط	relieved P	مرتاح
bored N	يشعر بالملل	excited P	متحمس	thrilled P	سعادة غامرة
calm P	هادئ	exhausted N	مرهق	tired N	متعب
cheerful P	مبتهج	fed up N	ضجر	upset N	تعيس
confident P	واثق	grateful P	ممتن	worried N	قلق
disappointed N	خائب الامل	pleased P	مسرور ، راضي		

B.p146-147/ Complete the sentences from the words in the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق (تم تغيير صيغة السؤال)

energetic نشيط / disappointed خائب الامل / excited متحمس / exhausted مرهق / anxious قلق

- Adam has just got back from holiday and he is feeling He is going to look for a new job and redecorate his house. **energetic**
- Ahmed expected to win a poetry competition, but he has come second. He is **disappointed**
- Salwa has won a prize to study in London this summer. She is very **excited**
- Samira has been studying non-stop for four weeks. She has not been sleeping well. She is **exhausted**
- Layla's grandmother is seriously ill. Layla is very **anxious**

U7: Lesson 8 (SB) P. 91 (I'm really sorry) انا حقا اسف

Lesson 8 (AB) P. 148 - 149

C.p148-149/ Complete the dialogues with the phrases from the box.

اكمل المحادثات التالية من العبارات التي في الصندوق

About time! حان الوقت / I couldn't help it. لم استطع تمالك نفسي / I guess not. لا اظن ذلك.
I suppose so. لاتوجد مشكلة / It's a deal! اتفقنا / You took ages. استغرقت وقتاً طويلاً

- You didn't have to laugh when I fell!
I'm really sorry. **I couldn't help it.** Are you OK?
- Is it OK if I invite Jasim to the party, too?
I suppose so. I'm still upset with him, but it's your party.
- We don't need to leave very early tomorrow, do we?
I guess not. We only need to be there around lunchtime.
- I think that is the pizza guy at the door.
About time! We ordered over an hour ago!
- I thought you said you were only going to the bathroom. **You took ages.**
I met Samira on the way and we had a chat.
- If you help me with Maths, I can give you a hand with History.
It's a deal!



U7: Lesson 9 (SB) P. 92 (You poor thing!) يا لك من مسكين

Lesson 9 (AB) P. 150 - 151

B.p150/ Match the parts of the dialogues below.

طابق اجزاء المحادثات التالية

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. My sister went to study abroad and I really miss her. c | a. I'm sorry to hear that, but I still need to see your homework. Can anyone bring it? |
| 2. I fell off my bike and broke my leg. e | b. That's fine, I can wait. Is there anything I can do to help? |
| 3. I'm going to be a bit late because my car broke down. b | c. it must be difficult for you. You two are so close. |
| 4. I'm afraid I forgot my History book at home. a | d. I'm sure you'll get another one soon. I am here for you, OK? |
| 5. Our team lost the final match. f | e. You poor thing. Are you still at the hospital? |
| 6. I've lost my job. d | f. You must be very upset. I know how much you wanted to win. |

U7: Round up (SB) P. 93 لاطلاع

Revision (AB) P. 152 - 153

A.p152/ All the vowels are missing in the words below. Read the clues and write the complete words.

كل احرف العلة مفقودة في الكلمات التالية ، اقرأ الدلائل واكتب الكلمات كاملة

Adjectives صفات

- | | | |
|------------|---|-------------------------|
| 1. BRLLNT | Fantastic, very good. | brilliant باهر ، رائع |
| 2. DSPNTD | Sad because things didn't happen as you expected. | disappointed خائب الامل |
| 3. MBRRSSD | Feeling that everyone saw you make a mistake. | embarrassed محرج |
| 4. FRS | Very angry. | furious غاضب جداً |
| 5. PNLSS | It didn't hurt. It was ... | painless غير مؤلم |
| 6. NXS | Worried. | anxious قلق |

Different kinds of people انواع مختلفة من الناس

- | | | |
|------------|--|-------------------------|
| 1. HRDRSSR | Someone who cuts hair. | hairdresser حلاق |
| 2. JWLLR | Someone who sells bracelets, necklaces, rings. | jeweller بائع المجوهرات |
| 3. PLMBR | Someone who fixes pipes and bathrooms. | plumber سباك |
| 4. CNTSTNT | Someone who is taking part in a competition or game. | contestant متسابق |
| 5. VWR | Someone who is watching TV. | viewer مشاهد |
| 6. DNC | People who are watching a live show. | audience جمهور |
| 7. GST | Someone who comes to stay. | guest ضيف |

Natural world العالم الطبيعي

- | | | |
|----------|--|----------------|
| 1. SNW | It's never cold enough in summer for this. | snow ثلج |
| 2. DWN | When the sun comes up. | dawn فجر |
| 3. SNST | When the sun goes down. | sunset غروب |
| 4. C | Frozen water. | ice جليد ، ثلج |
| 5. FLWRS | They come out in spring. | flowers ورود |
| 6. WND | It can blow you away. | wind رياح |
| 7. S | People swim in it in the summer. | sea بحر |
| 8. CLDS | They cover the sun. | clouds غيوم |



B.p153/ Write the missing letter at the beginning and the end of each word. The clues will help you.
اكتب الاحرف المفقودة في بدايات ونهايات كل كلمة ، الدلائل سوف تساعدك

- | | | |
|--|---------------------------|---------------|
| 1. She always smells nice. She wears lovely ... | <u>perfum</u> e | عطر |
| 2. What time are they going to ... the meal? | <u>serv</u> e | يقدم |
| 3. Shall I do it? Yes? No? I hate this ... | <u>indecisio</u> n | تردد ، حيرة |
| 4. I'm really sorry. Please ... me. | <u>forgiv</u> e | يسامح |
| 5. The ... gave him a yellow card in the last match. | <u>refere</u> e | حكم |
| 6. He is very worried. He is suffering from ... | <u>anxiety</u> y | قلق |
| 7. They're getting married. Their ... is next month. | <u>wedding</u> | زفاف |
| 8. They tied the two boats together with ... | <u>rop</u> e | حبل |
| 9. Who won the first ... of the game? | <u>round</u> | جولة |
| 10. Another word for <i>build</i> . | <u>construct</u> | بناء ، تشييد |
| 11. To have a picture in your mind. | <u>imagin</u> e | يتصور ، يتخيل |
| 12. Write your ... at the end of the form. | <u>signatur</u> e | توقيع |

C.p153/ Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل التالية بالصيغة الصحيحة للمبني للمجهول للافعال التي بين الاقواس

- Breakfast (serve) every day from 7-10 a.m., and dinner from 6-9 p.m. **is served**
- We had classes outside last week because our classroom (paint) **was being painted**
- How many candidates (interview) for the job at the moment? **are being interviewed**
- The final decision (not make) yet. **hasn't been made**
- The painting (sell) for over £100,000 last month. **was sold**
- He suddenly realized that his bike (steal) **had been stolen**

D.p153/ Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

اكمل الجمل التالية بالصيغة الصحيحة للمبني للمجهول للافعال التي بين الاقواس

يحصل ، يملك / have / يحصل / get / بالاسف / What / مثير للشفقة ، مسكين / thing / من اجل / for / في / in / خطأ / fault

- It wasn't my **fault** I was late. The bus broke down.
- Please complete this form **in** block capitals.
- That's great news, I'm really happy **for** you! Congratulations!
- You poor **thing**! You must be really upset.
- What** a shame! Maybe next time you'll have more luck.
- Where do you **get/have** your nails done? They look great!



Test (AB) P. 154 - 157

A.p154/ Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

اكمل الجمل التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق

anxious قلق / audience جمهور / disappointed خائب الامل / embarrassed مُحرج / furious غاضب
 imagine يتخيل ، يتصور / signature توقيع / thrilled سعادة غامرة

- 'You've broken my glasses, you silly boy. I'm with you.' **furious**
- At the end of the play, the clapped and shouted. **audience**
- At the restaurant, I didn't have enough money to pay the bill. I was very, but the waiter told me I could bring the money the next day. **embarrassed**
- Can you how life will be in the year 2050? **imagine**
- He didn't get the place at medical school that he expected, so he is rather **disappointed**
- My parents were when I won first prize in a photography competition. **thrilled**
- He's very about his wife, who is seriously ill. **anxious**
- I don't know who this letter is from. I can't read the **signature**

B.p154-155/ Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة لكل جملة

- Did you see the bracelet I bought for Muna? (who / where / **that**)
- He said he hadn't told about the extra class. (be / **been** / being)
- I don't like people tell lies. (they / **who** / when)
- How many matches been played so far? (**have** / are / were)
- You can have clothes there very cheaply. (making / make / **made**)
- I like films make me laugh. (when / whose / **which**)
- The doors locked every night. (**are** / must / they)
- I know someone father is a film star. (their / which / **whose**)
- There's a nice restaurant you can sit outside. (**where** / which / that)
- When are we to the airport? (be driven / be drove / **being driven**)
- Where did you your car repaired? (**get** / getting / got)
- Where will the new sports centre? (being built / building / **be built**)



C.p155/ Use the prompts to complete these dialogues. Write questions in the first part and statements in the second. Remember to check the tenses and the punctuation.

استخدم المعطيات لتكمل المحادثات التالية ، اكتب اسئلة في القسم الاول وبعدها اكتب اجابة لها ، تأكد من الزمن والتنقيط الصحيح

1. Sara: (hair / look nice / where / get / cut)

- **Your hair looks nice. Where did you get it cut?**

Layla: At home.

Sara: (really / your mother / do / it)

- **Really, Did your mother do it?**

Layla: No, it was done by Jameela.

Sara: (Jameela / friend)

- **Is Jameela your/a friend?**

Layla: No, she's a hairdresser who comes to our house.

2. Salman: (my brother / interviewed / a reporter / yesterday)

- **My brother was interviewed by a reporter yesterday.**

Jamal: Why?

Salman: (he / captain / tennis team / won / Cup)

- **He is the captain of the tennis team that won the Cup.**

Jamal: Oh, that's good. Will he be on TV?

Salman: (no / photo / taken / in today's newspaper)

- **No, but his photo was taken and it should/will/may/might be in today's newspaper.**

Jamal: Are you going to buy the newspaper?

Salman: (no / reporter said / it / sent / our house)

- **No, the reporter said it would be sent to our house.**

Jamal: Well, I'd better buy one.



(AB) P. 156 (Lonodn's most famous store) اشهر متجر في لندن

Without a doubt, Harrods is London's most famous department store. It is situated in Knightsbridge, one of London's most expensive areas.

Harrods, which was founded in 1834 by Charles Henry Harrod in East London, was moved to its current site in Knightsbridge, Central London, 15 years later. To begin with, the shop was just one room with two shop assistants and a messenger boy. By 1880, Harrod's son, Charles Digby, had built up the business so that the shop sold medicines, perfumes, notebooks and paper, fruit and vegetables. In 1883, there was a fire and the shop burnt to the ground. A new building was immediately constructed, however, and since then Harrods has gone from strength to strength.

Today, Harrods is a huge department store with 35,000 customers every day. During the sales, there are 300,000 customers a day. The shop has 4,000 people working in the store. The food department sells 250 different kinds of cheese and 130 different types of bread. The confectionery department sells 100 tonnes of chocolate per year. The exterior of the store is lit by 12,500 bulbs and 300 of them have to be changed every day.

Harrods has a motto which is 'Everything for Everybody Everywhere'. If you are rich enough, you can buy diamond-covered shoes which cost a million pounds! And there are many more true stories about unusual things which have been sold to important customers. In the early 1900s, wealthy customers could even buy planes and sailing boats from Harrods. Of course, they had to be ordered first, then paid for, then delivered. Later, in the 1930s, Harrods had on show one of the world's first television sets. The famous British writer, Noel Coward, was once given an alligator which had been ordered and bought at Harrods as a Christmas gift. The American president, Ronald Reagan, was given a baby elephant which had been bought at Harrods. The British film director, Alfred Hitchcock, used to have his favourite fresh fish flown out to him in America by Harrods.

While it is true that Harrods sells just about anything you could want, it is one of the most expensive shops in Britain. So perhaps Harrods should change their motto to 'Everything for Everybody Rich Everywhere'!

Lonodn's most famous store اشهر متجر في لندن

قطعة الوحدة السابعة 2

1. What type of shop is Harrods? ما نوع متجر هارودز
- It is a department store. إنه متجر متعدد الأقسام.
2. Where is Harrods? أين يقع هارودز
- It is in Knightsbridge, Central London. يقع في نايتسبريدج ، وسط لندن.
3. When was Harrods founded? متى تأسس متجر هارودز
- It was founded in 1834. تأسس عام 1834 ميلادي.
4. Why did Harrods have to be rebuilt in 1883? لماذا في عام 1883 أعيد بناء هارودز
- Because it burnt to the ground. لأنه احترق بالكامل.
5. When are there many more customers per day? متى يزداد عدد الزبائن يومياً
- There are many more customers when there are sales. يزداد عدد الزبائن عند وجود تخفيضات.
6. Name three everyday things which can be bought at Harrods. اذكر ثلاثة أشياء يومية يمكن شراؤها من هارودز
- Cheese, bread and chocolate can be bought at Harrods. يمكن شراء الجبن والخبز والشوكولاتة من هارودز.
7. What three occupations are mentioned in the article? ما هي المهن الثلاث المذكورة في المقال
- A writer, a president and a film director. كاتب ، رئيس ، ومخرج أفلام.



F.p157/ Write a paragraph about a shopping trip that went wrong.

اكتب انشاء عن رحلة تسوق جرت بصورة خاطئة

(انشاء الوحدة السابعة) 2

A shopping trip that went wrong رحلة تسوق جرت بصورة خاطئة

Last week, I went with my friends for a shopping trip to Mid Town Mall. We wanted to buy some clothes for our friend's wedding. We went to a shop called 'Adidas'.

It was a big shop and the assistant was very nice. He showed us some of models then we asked him 'How much is that T-shirt?' 'Thirty dollars' he replied. We bought three T-shirts with different colours. Then he wrapped them up.

When we left the shop I found that he wrapped up the wrong T-shirt for me. I was angry and I came back to the shop. Finally, I took my suitable T-shirt.

ذهبت الأسبوع الماضي مع أصدقائي في رحلة تسوق إلى مول ميد تاون. أردنا شراء بعض الملابس لحفل زفاف صديقنا. ذهبنا إلى متجر يدعى "إديداس".

كان متجرًا كبيرًا وكان عامل المتجر لطيفًا جدًا. عرض علينا بعض الموديلات ثم سألناه "كم سعر هذا القميص؟" أجاب "ثلاثون دولارًا". اشترينا ثلاثة قمصان بألوان مختلفة. ثم غلفهم.

عندما غادرنا المتجر وجدت أنه غلف لي القميص الخطأ. كنت غاضبًا وعدت إلى المحل. أخيرًا، أخذت قميصي المناسب.

تمرين (E) ص 156-157. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة



نهاية الوحدة السابعة

النجاح ليس نتيجة لعدم ارتكاب خطأ
ولكنه نتيجة لعدم تكرار نفس الخطأ مرتين



UNIT EIGHT / الوحدة الثامنة

U8: Lesson 1 (SB) P. 96 (A person who cuts hair) الشخص الذي يقص الشعر

Lesson 1 (AB) P. 158 - 159

2.p158/ Match the descriptions on the left with the words on the right.

طابق الجمل الموجودة على اليسار مع الكلمات التي على اليمين

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. the sweet stuff that bees make i | a. a hairdresser حلاق |
| 2. a person who cuts hair professionally a | b. a plumber سباك |
| 3. the place where you get your hair cut c | c. a salon صالون |
| 4. a thing that you sleep in when you go camping d | d. a tent خيمة |
| 5. the black stuff you burn on barbecues h | e. a tie ربطة عنق |
| 6. the thing which men wear round their neck when they're wearing a suit e | f. an audience جمهور |
| 7. someone who fixes pipes in kitchens and bathrooms b | g. an exhibition معرض |
| 8. people who are watching a show f | h. charcoal فحم |
| 9. a collection of things in a place where people can come and see them g | i. honey عسل |

A.p158/ Match the phrases with the definitions.

طابق العبارات مع التعاريف

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A driveway is d ممر السيارة | a. a tool which is half-spoon and half-fork. |
| 2. A bakery is f مخبز | a professional that cuts and sells meat. |
| 3. A spork is a ملعقة شوكية | c. an object that keeps you from getting wet on rainy days. |
| 4. An umbrella is c مظلة | d. the part of the house where you park your car. |
| 5. A butcher is b قصاب | e. a person that you know, but not very well. |
| 6. An acquaintance is e معرفة شخصية | f. a shop where you can buy bread. |



B.p159/ Hiba and Nawal are playing a game. Complete the dialogue with *who*, *which* or *where*.

اكمل المحادثة التالية بـ *who* , *which* , *where*

Hiba: I'll go first. This is a person who takes care of sick animals.

Nawal: That's easy ... a vet. My turn ... OK, so this is something which can help you learn synonyms. It's like a dictionary ...

Hiba: I know ... hold on ... a thesaurus! That was hard. Me now... this is a place where you go to buy medicine.

Nawal: A chemist's. I'm good at this game! Next one ...

Hiba: OK, so this is the part of the house where people store things, below the roof.

Nawal: Oh, yes ... what's that called? I know! The attic!

Hiba: Correct! Your turn.

Nawal: So ... this is a tool which you use to put nails in the wall or in wood.

Hiba: I know what you mean, but I don't think I know the word ...

Nawal: It's a hammer! So my turn again then ... these are people who you call when there's a fire.

Hiba: Firefighters?

Nawal: Yes, well done!



C.p159/ Write definitions for these words and phrases using a relative pronoun each time.

اكتب تعاريف للكلمات والعبارات التالية باستخدام ضمير وصل مناسب

Example. A competitor **is someone who takes part in a competition or game.**

المتسابق هو شخص يُشارك في مُسابقة أو لعبة

1. A necklace is something which women wear around their necks (for decoration).

القلادة هي شيء ترتديه النساء حول أعناقهن (للزينة)

2. A jeweller is someone who sells jewellery.

الصانغ هو شخص يبيع المجوهرات

3. Snow is frozen rain/something that falls from the sky in winter in cold countries.

الثلج هو مطر مُجمد يسقط من السماء في الشتاء في البلدان الباردة

4. An island is land that is surrounded by water.

الجزيرة هي أرض مُحاطة بالمياه

5. An optician is someone who tests eyes.

أخصائي البصريات هو شخص يفحص العيون

6. Contact lenses are things that people can wear in their eyes to help them see better.

العدسات اللاصقة هي أشياء يُمكن للناس ارتداؤها في أعينهم لمساعدتهم على الرؤية بشكل أفضل

7. A game show is a game that is played on television.

برنامج المسابقات هو لعبة تُعرض على التلفزيون

8. A market is a place where you can buy all sorts of things.

السوق هو مكان يُمكنك فيه شراء جميع أنواع الأشياء

9. A time limit is the amount of time that is given to do something.

الحد الزمني هو مقدار الوقت المُخصص لفعل شيء ما

10. A soap opera is a TV drama that is about the lives of everyday people.

المسلسل الدرامي هو دراما تلفزيونية تتناول حياة الناس العاديين

11. A still life is a painting that has objects in it, not people.

الطبيعة الصامتة هي لوحة تحتوي على أشياء ، وليس أشخاصاً

(أمثلة إمتحانية)

Ex: Define an optician. (عرّف اخصائي البصريات)

- **An optician is someone who tests eyes.**

Ex: Define a necklace. (عرّف القلادة)

- **A necklace is something which women wear around their necks (for decoration).**



U8: Lesson 2 (SB) P. 97 (Wouldn't it be great!) الن يكون رائعا

SB.p97/ Complete the conversation with the words from the box.

أكمل المحادثة التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق

apply يقدم / cinema سينما / comedy كوميديا / fun ممتع ، مشوق ، يملك / job وظيفة
motorcycle دراجة نارية / number رقم / were كنت

Rashid: What are your plans for this summer?

Justin: If I lots of money, I'd buy a and drive around Europe. **had / motorcycle**

Rashid: Could I come with you and sit on the back?

Justin: Ha, ha. Very funny. I don't have any money. So I won't even be able to go to the unless I get a holiday job pretty soon. **cinema**Rashid: I saw an ad for a that you might be interested in. **job**

Justin: Really? What was it?

Rashid: They're looking for 80 extras in a film. It's a **comedy**Justin: Wow! That would be! How much are they paying? **fun**Rashid: Quite a lot. I'm going to Do you want the? **apply / number**

Justin: Yes, please. I'd better put it straight onto my mobile.

Rashid: If I you, I'd call them right away. **were**

Justin: Thanks. Wouldn't it be great if we both got parts!

Lesson 2 (AB) P. 160 - 161

A.p160/ Complete the sentences with the second conditional form of the verbs in brackets.

أكمل الجمل التالية مستخدماً صيغة الحالة الشرطية الثانية للأفعال التي بين الأقواس

1. If I (win) the lottery, I (travel) around the world.

- If I **won** the lottery, I **would travel** around the world.

2. He (not be) so tired, if he (go) to bed earlier.

- He **would not** be so tired, if he **went** to bed earlier.

3. If I (study) harder, I (pass) all my exams.

- If I **studied** harder, I **would pass** all my exams.

4. If I (be) you, I (exercise) every day.

- If I **were** you, I **would exercise** every day.

5. You (feel) better by now, if you (take) your medicines.

- You **would feel** better by now, if you **took** your medicines.

6. If I (have) the money, I (buy) a new car.

- If I **had** the money, I **would buy** a new car.

7. I (tell) you, if I (not want) to come to your party.

- I **would tell** you, if I **did not want** to come to your party.

8. If I (speak) another language, I (get) a better job.

- If I **spoke** another language, I **would get** a better job.

C.p161/ Imagine you are going to an interview for an audition. Write a short description of yourself. What details do you think you should include?

اكتب انشاء عن وصف نفسك لتجربة اداء

(انشاء الوحدة الثامنة)

Describe yourself for an audition صف نفسك لتجربة اداء

Hello, my name is Ali. I am 30 years old and I live in Mosul. I love acting and speaking in front of people.

I am friendly, confident, and always ready to learn new skills. In my free time, I enjoy reading, watching movies, and practicing English.

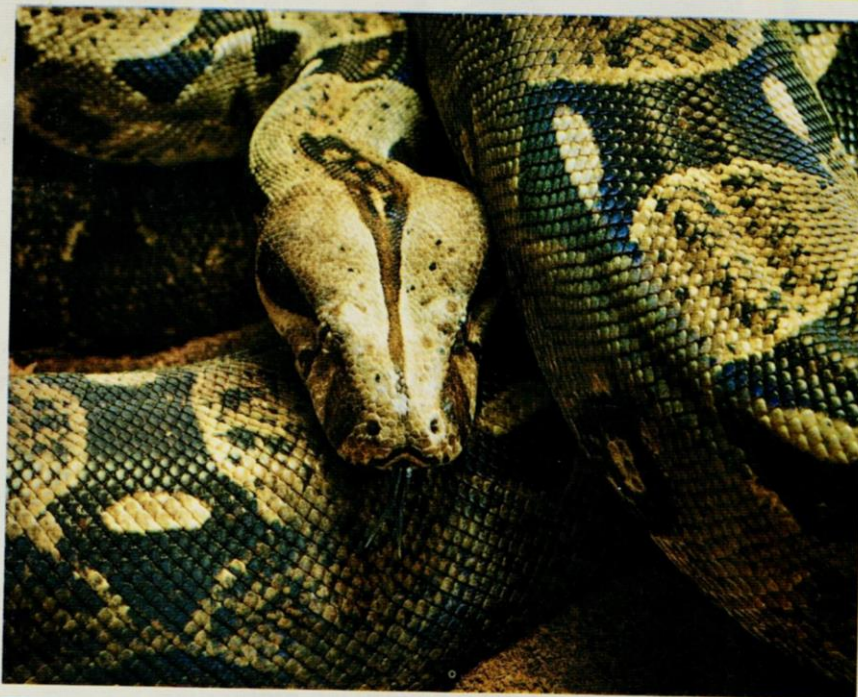
I believe I can bring energy and emotion to any role. I am very excited for this audition.

مرحبًا ، اسمي علي. عمري 30 سنة وأعيش في الموصل. أحب التمثيل والتحدث أمام الناس.

أنا شخص ودود وواثق من نفسي ، ودائمًا مستعد لتعلم مهارات جديدة. في وقت فراغي أستمتع بالقراءة ، ومشاهدة الأفلام ، وممارسة اللغة الإنكليزية.

أؤمن أنني أستطيع أن أضيف طاقة ومشاعر لأي دور. أنا متحمس جدًا لهذا الاختبار.

U8: Lesson 3 (SB) P. 98 (Caught at last!) تم امساكها اخيرا



Andrews told reporters, 'and I saw a huge snake in the toilet. It was horrible. I didn't know what to do. I wondered if I was dreaming. My wife came to look and she was very frightened. We put some heavy books on the toilet seat and went back to bed. In the morning, the snake had gone.'

People in six other flats in the building also saw the snake, but they were all too frightened to try to catch it. On two occasions, the fire brigade were called, but when they arrived, the snake had already disappeared.

Finally, the snake was found last night on Mr and Mrs Mailer's bathroom floor, on the eighth floor of the building. It was caught in a large bucket and the police were called. The snake was taken back to its home in the zoo, to everyone's relief.

The terrified residents of a block of flats in London can finally sleep peacefully at night. An enormous snake that was living in toilet pipes in the block of flats has been caught at last.

The snake, a three-metre long boa constrictor, had been seen in different toilets in the building over the past three months. At first, no one knew where the animal had come from. Then, one of the residents

saw a local news report about the escape of a boa constrictor from London Zoo.

The snake was first seen by James Andrews. 'I got up in the night to go to the bathroom,' Mr



تم امساكها اخيرا Caught at last!

قطعة الوحدة الثامنة

1. What has been caught at last? **ما الذي تم اصطياده أخيراً**
- **A three-metre long snake.** ثعبان طوله ثلاثة أمتار
2. Where was the snake caught? **أين تم اصطياد الثعبان**
- **In a bathroom on the eighth floor.** في حمام بالطابق الثامن
3. Where had the snake come from? **من أين جاء الثعبان**
- **It had escaped from London Zoo.** هرب من حديقة حيوان لندن
4. Why had the snake not been caught before? **لماذا لم يُقبض على الثعبان من قبل**
- **People were too frightened, or it had disappeared.** كان الناس خائفين جداً ، أو اختفى
5. Where was the snake taken to? **إلى أين تم أخذ الثعبان**
- **Back to the zoo.** أعيد إلى حديقة الحيوان

Lesson 1 (AB) P. 162 – 163

تمرين (2) ص 162. حل التمرين موجود في الملزمة ، مدمج مع اسئلة واجوبة القطعة

A.p162/ Complete the text with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الفقرة الاتشانية التالية باستخدام صيغة المبني للمجهول الصحيحة للافعال التي بين الاقواس

Every year, hundreds of snakes (buy) **are bought** by people who want an unusual pet. Unfortunately, these animals (not always look after) **are not always looked after** very well. Sometimes they (leave) **are left** without food or water to die, and sometimes they (throw out) **are thrown out** by people who no longer want them once they grow too big to handle. Last year, 12 imported pet snakes (find) **were found** in city locations around the United Kingdom. A man who left one in a flat in Manchester (still not find) **has still not been found** by the police. The police and animal protection groups have said that pets should not (buy) **be bought** unless they can (take) **be taken** care of. They say that anyone that is found guilty of dumping snakes or other pets (bring) **will/should be brought** to justice.

B.p162/ Match the words to their definitions.

طابق الكلمات مع تعاريفها

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|--|
| 1. terrified | d مرعوب | a. feeling doubtful about something |
| 2. block of flats | h مبنى سكني | b. something that has become impossible to find |
| 3. toilet pipes | g انابيب دورة المياه | c. a feeling of calmness after experiencing stress |
| 4. at last | i أخيراً | d. feeling extremely frightened |
| 5. news report | j تقرير إخباري | e. people that are trained to extinguish fires |
| 6. wondered | a يتساءل ، يراوده الشك | f. an open cylindrical container, usually with a handle |
| 7. fire brigade | e فرقة إطفاء | g. tubes connected to the lavatory |
| 8. disappeared | b اختفى | h. a building that has usually many apartments |
| 9. bucket | f دلو | i. in the end |
| 10. relief | c ارتياح ، انتعاش | J. information written by journalists about current events |



U8: Lesson 4 (SB) P. 99 (What did they ask you?) ماذا سألوكم

SB.p99/ Complete the conversation with the words from the box.

اكمل المحادثة التالية من الكلمات التي في الصندوق

headteacher مدير / interview مقابلة عمل / job وظيفة / volunteer متطوع

Huda: I had my interview this morning.

Ameena: What for?

Huda: You know! I applied to be a volunteer at the next Olympics.

Ameena: Oh, yes. Sorry, I forgot. What did they ask you?

Huda: The director asked me if I had any previous experience in sports management. And he also asked me how many foreign languages I spoke. Then his assistant asked me if I enjoyed meeting new people.

Ameena: Do you think you'll get the job?Huda: I think so. At the end of the interview, the director asked me if he could get a reference from my headteacher.

Lesson 4 (AB) P. 164 - 165

A.p164/ Anna is telling a friend about her interview for a job. Write the reported questions under each direct question.

اكتب أسئلة منقولة للأسئلة المباشرة التالية

Questions Anna was asked at her interview:

Example: Where are you working at the moment?

- They asked me **where I was working at the moment.**

1. What computer programmes are used in your current job?

- They asked me **what computer programmes were used in my current job.**

2. How many people have you got working under you?

- They asked me **how many people worked under me.**

3. Do you have to travel a lot in your current job?

- They asked me **if I had to travel a lot in my current job.**

4. Where did you learn to speak Arabic?

- They asked me **where I had learnt to speak Arabic.**

5. Do you speak it fluently?

- They asked me **if I spoke it fluently.**

6. How many other languages do you speak?

- They asked me **how many other languages I spoke.**

7. Have you ever worked in the Middle East?

- They asked me **if I had ever worked in the Middle East.**

8. How long were you the editor of the local magazine?

- They asked me **how long I had been the editor of the local magazine.**

9. When will you be free to start the job?

- They asked me **when I would be free to start the job.**

10. Can you type?

- They asked me **if I could type.**

11. Have you got a clean driving licence?

- They asked me **if I had got a clean driving licence.**

Test (AB) P. 166 - 167

A.p166/ Match the orders on the left with the reasons on the right. Then write sentences with *you'd better ... because ...*

طابق الأوامر الموجودة على اليسار مع الاسباب الموجودة على اليمين بعدها اكتب الجمل بالكامل مستخدماً *you'd better ... because ...*

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Be quiet. g | a. You might not have time later. |
| 2. Change your clothes. c | b. I'm not going to say this again. |
| 3. Change some money now. a | c. It might be a very formal party. |
| 4. Listen. b | d. It might be cold. |
| 5. Tell one of your parents. e | e. They might be worried. |
| 6. Take a sweater. d | f. You might forget it. |
| 7. Write it down. f | g. Everyone's asleep. |

- 1g. **You'd better** be quiet **because** everyone's asleep.
- 2c. **You'd better** change your clothes **because** it might be a very formal party.
- 3a. **You'd better** change some money now **because** you might not have time later.
- 4b. **You'd better** listen **because** I'm not going to say this again.
- 5e. **You'd better** tell one of your parents **because** they might be worried.
- 6d. **You'd better** take a sweater **because** it might be cold.
- 7f. **You'd better** write it down **because** you might forget it.

B.p166/ Circle the word in each group that doesn't belong. Choose the correct name for each group.

استخرج الكلمة الغريبة من كل مجموعة ، بعدها اختر الاسم المناسب للمجموعة من الكلمات والعبارات التي في الصندوق

adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار / فن art / cleaning تنظيف / cooking طبخ / countryside الريف
describing food وصف الطعام / newspapers جرائد / TV programmes برامج تلفزيونية / types of film انواع الافلام

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| Example. boil drink fry heat | cooking |
| 1. article font headline realistic | newspapers |
| 2. action forecast horror thriller | types of film |
| 3. chat show game show soap opera still-life | TV programmes |
| 4. comedy exhibition painting gallery | art |
| 5. parsley salty spicy tasteless | describing food |
| 6. sweep dust wash jump | cleaning |
| 7. field meadow trees sea | countryside |
| 8. always rarely never new | adverbs of frequency |



C.p167/ Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

اختر الاختيار الصحيح لتكمل الجمل التالية

1. It's really late. ... go home now. (We better / We'd better / We'd better to)
2. If I ... you, I'd ask the doctor about the cut on your hand. (was / am / were)
3. Do you ever wish you ... more money? (have / had / having)
4. I feel sick. I wish I ... so much chocolate. (don't eat / can't eat / hadn't eaten)
5. I really wish you ... come with us tomorrow. (could / can / will)
6. There's plenty of time. We ... to do this essay until next week. (don't have / didn't have / mustn't)
7. How many questions ... to answer in the test last week? (must you / did you / did you have)
8. The dentist told me ... sweets or chocolate. (not to eat / not eating / mustn't eat)
9. Layla asked ... come on the picnic with us. (can she / if she could / she could)
10. My brother asked me where ... been. (you have / I have / I had)
11. Nowadays, a lot of good films ... in the Middle East. (are making / were made / are being made)
12. A lot of changes ... since your last visit. (have been made / were made / are made)
13. I really think something ... about the rubbish in the park.
(could do / must be doing / should be done)
14. Do you remember that place ... we had a picnic last year? (which / where / whose)
15. Where did you have your bike ...? (repair / repairing / repaired)



نهاية الوحدة الثامنة

لا تنسونا من صالح دعائكم



Literature Focus **الادب**

Little Women **نساء صغيرات**

Section 1 **القسم الاول**

1. Why do Jo and her sisters think they will not have their father 'perhaps ever'?

لماذا تعتقد جو وأخواتها أنهن لن يحظين بوالدهن "ربما للابد"

- **Because he might die in the war.** لأنه قد يموت في الحرب

2. Why doesn't Mother want any presents for Christmas? لماذا لا تريد الأم أي هدايا لعيد الميلاد

- **Because she thinks they shouldn't spend money for pleasure at this difficult time.**

لأنها تعتقد أنه لا ينبغي لهن إنفاق المال على المتعة في هذا الوقت العصيب

3. How much money does each of the sisters have? كم من المال تمتلك كل من الأخوات

- **One dollar.** دولار واحد

4. What does Jo suggest they do? ماذا تقترح جو أن يفعلن

- **Spend their money buying things for themselves.** اقترحت ان ينفقن أموالهن في شراء أشياء لأنفسهن

5. Why can't Beth practise her piano? لماذا لا تستطيع بيت التدرّب على البيانو

- **Because her hands are tired from washing dishes.** لأن يديها متعبتان من غسل الأطباق

6. Why does Amy think she suffers the most? لماذا تعتقد أمي أنها تعاني أكثر من غيرها

- **Because she goes to school with nasty girls.** لأنها تذهب إلى المدرسة مع فتيات سيئات

7. Match each sister with the present they want. طابق الأخوات مع الهدايا التي يريدونها

- **Jo wants books.** جو تحب الكتب

- **Beth wants music.** بيت تحب الموسيقى

- **Amy wants drawing materials.** أمي تحب ادوات للرسم

- **Meg wants pretty things.** ميغ تحب الاشياء الجميلة

8. Find a word or phrase in the text that means: جد كلمة او عبارة موجودة في النص والتي تعني التالي

- without saying anything = **silently** بصمت

- not necessary, for fun = **for pleasure** للتسلية ، للمتعة

- said loudly = **cried** صرخ ، صاح

- talked about something that they were annoyed with = **complained** يتذمر ، يشتكي

- unhappy = **upset** منزعج ، مضطرب ، منفعل

- opposite of soft = **rough** قاسي

- mean = **nasty** سيء ، حقير ، سافل

- joke about = **make fun of** يسخر من

9. **Amy** is a student. أمي ، طالبة

10. **Beth** does the housework. بيت ، تؤدي عمل المنزل

11. **Meg** is a teacher. ميغ ، معلمة

12. **Jo** keeps an elderly person company. جو ، تبقى بصحبة كبار السن



القسم الثاني Section 2

1. What does Beth want to give Mr Laurence? ماذا تريد بيت أن تعطي للسيد لورانس

- a. a piano. بيانو
- b. some flowers. بعض الزهور
- c. a pair of slippers. زوج من الشبشب

2. Who pays for the material to make the slippers? من يدفع ثمن المواد اللازمة لصنع الشبشب

- a. Meg herself. ميغ نفسها
- b. Mother. الأم
- c. all the sisters. جميع الأخوات

3. Who helps Beth deliver her gift? من يساعد بيت في توصيل هديتها

- a. Laurie. لوري
- b. Jo. جو
- c. Meg. ميغ

4. Why did Beth leave the house on the second day? لماذا غادرت بيت المنزل في اليوم الثاني

- a. because she was upset. لأنها كانت مستاءة
- b. to help her mother. لمساعدة والدتها
- c. due to excitement. بسبب المتعة

5. Why did Jo read Mr Laurence's letter? لماذا قرأت جو رسالة السيد لورانس

- a. to know what it said before Beth arrived. لمعرفة ما جاء فيها قبل وصول بيت
- b. because Beth fell. لأن بيت سقطت
- c. because Beth was too excited. لأن بيت كانت متحمسة للغاية

6. Why did Mr Laurence give the piano to Beth? لماذا أعطى السيد لورانس البيانو لبيت

- a. because he received a gift from her. لأنه تلقى هدية منها
- b. because he owed her money. لأنه مدين لها بالمال
- c. because he didn't need it anymore. لأنه لم يعد بحاجة إليه



7. Mother never refused Beth's requests because she always asked things for others. (**True** / False)

لم ترفض الأم طلبات بيت أبداً لأنها كانت تطلب دائماً أشياء للآخرين

8. Meg and Jo helped make the slippers. (True / **False**)

ميغ وجو ساعدوا في صنع الشبشب

9. It took a long time to make the slippers. (True / **False**)

استغرق صنع الشبشب وقتاً طويلاً

10. Beth thought that Mr Laurence had not liked her gift. (**True** / False)

اعتقدت بيت أن السيد لورانس لم تعجبه هديتها

11. Amy was going to tell Beth about the piano, but Jo didn't let her. (**True** / False)

كانت أمي ستخبر بيت عن البيانو ، لكن جو لم تسمح لها بذلك

12. Beth's sisters had already read Mr Laurence's letter by the time she got home. (True / **False**)

كانت شقيقات بيت قد قرأن بالفعل رسالة السيد لورانس بحلول الوقت الذي عادت فيه إلى المنزل

13. Mr Laurence took great care of his granddaughter's possessions. (**True** / False)

اعتنى السيد لورانس بممتلكات حفيدته كثيراً

14. Find a word or phrase in the text that means:

- answered = **replied** (اجاب ، يرد)

- the part behind (e.g., design or setting) = **background** (خلفية ، العنصر الاساسي الغير ظاهر كالإضاءة والديكور)

- with enthusiasm = **excitedly** (بتعصب ، بانفعال)

- without colour (e.g., a face) = **pale** (شاحب اللون والبشرة)

- not believing = **in disbelief** (لا يثق ، عدم ثقة)

- not modern = **old-fashioned** (طراز قديم)

- thankful = **grateful** (ممتن)

15. Beth decides to make a pair of **slippers** to thank Mr Laurence, and, with Laurie's help, leaves them in his **study table** with a note. Two days later, Beth came back home to find a piano in the **parlour**, along with an **envelope** addressed 'To Miss Elizabeth March'. Mr Laurence gave her the instrument that had belonged to his **granddaughter**. Beth had never felt so **excited** in her life.

قررت بيت أن تصنع زوجاً من الشبشب لتشكر السيد لورانس ، وبمساعدة لوري ، تركتها على طاولة الدراسة الخاصة به مع ملاحظة. بعد يومين ، عادت بيت إلى المنزل لتجد بيانو في غرفة المعيشة ، إلى جانبها ظرف مكتوب عليه "إلى الأنسة إليزابيث مارش". أعطاه السيد لورانس الآلة الموسيقية التي كانت تعود لحفيدته. لم تشعر بيت بمثل هذا القدر من السعادة في حياتها.



Section 3 القسم الثالث

1. Jo thinks she has the life she had always wanted. (True / **False**) تعتقد جو أنها تعيش الحياة التي طالما أرادتها
2. Jo thinks she will never fulfil her dream of writing a book. (True / **False**) تعتقد جو أنها لن تحقق حلمها أبداً بكتابة كتاب
3. Meg feels sorry for not having the beautiful things she wanted. (True / **False**) تشعر ميغ بالأسف لعدم حصولها على الأشياء الجميلة التي أرادتها
4. Amy is afraid of losing her baby girl. (**True** / False) تخشى أمي فقدان طفلتها
5. Jo thinks she will be rich one day. (True / **False**) تعتقد جو أنها ستصبح غنية يوماً ما
6. Jo is grateful to their mother for what they have become. (**True** / False) تشعر جو بالامتنان لأمهما لما أصبحوا عليه
7. **Jo** thinks she only thought of herself before. **جو** تعتقد أنها لم تفكر إلا في نفسها من قبل
8. **Meg** knew that she always wanted to have a family. **ميغ** كانت تعلم أنها أرادت دائماً أن يكون لها عائلة
9. **Amy** wants to make a statue. **أمي** تريد أن تصنع تمثالاً
10. **Laurie** is becoming stronger and more serious. **لوري** يصبح أقوى وأكثر جدية
11. **Mother** tells Amy to be hopeful about her daughter. **الأم** تخبر أمي أن تكون متفائلة بشأن ابنتها
12. What are castles a reference for in the passage? إلى ماذا تشير أو ترمز القلاع في الرواية?
- **For their dreams and expectations.** لأحلامهم وتوقعاتهم
13. Why does Jo think she can write a better book in the future?
لماذا تعتقد جو أنها تستطيع كتابة كتاب أفضل في المستقبل
- **Because she will have had experiences such as her family.** لأنها ستخوض تجارب مثل تجارب عائلتها
14. Why is Amy making a statue of a baby? لماذا تصنع أمي تمثالاً لطفل
- **So she can keep the image of her angel no matter what happens.** لتتمكن من الاحتفاظ بصورة ملاكها مهما حدث
15. What have Amy and Laurie come to realize? ما الذي أدركوه أمي ولوري
- **That beauty, youth, luck and even love cannot keep pain and loss away.** أن الجمال والشباب والحظ وحتى الحب لا يمكنهم إبعاد الألم والخسارة
16. Why is harvest mentioned at the end of the passage? لماذا تم ذكر الحصاد في نهاية الرواية
- **It is a reference to working hard and doing good things, then receiving the benefits from that.** الحصاد إشارة إلى العمل الجاد والقيام بأشياء جيدة ، ثم تحصد الفوائد من ذلك
17. Find a word or phrase in the text that means: **جد كلمة أو عبارة موجودة في النص والتي تعني التالي**
 - with love = **lovingly** بحب
 - a wish to do art = **artistic hopes** آمال فنية
 - make something happen = **fulfil** انجز ، اكمل
 - darkness = **shadow** ظل ، ظلام
 - acting without thinking = **impulsive** تهور ، اندفاع ، التصرف بدون تفكير
 - way = **manner** أسلوب ، طريقة



Literature Focus **الادب**

The Tempest **العاصفة**

Section 1 **القسم الاول**

- Who was Prospero 12 years ago? **من كان بروسبيرو قبل 12 عامًا**
- **He was the Duke of Milan, a prince with great power.** **كان دوق ميلانو ، أميرًا يتمتع بسلطة كبيرة.**
- How did Prospero lose this position? **كيف خسر بروسبيرو هذا المنصب**
- **He was betrayed by his brother, with the help of Alonso.** **تعرض للخيانة من قبل أخيه ، بمساعدة ألونسو.**
- Why did Prospero order Ariel to create the tempest? **لماذا أمر بروسبيرو آرييل ان يعمل العاصفة**
- **He did that to bring his enemies to the island.** **فعل ذلك لإحضار أعداءه إلى الجزيرة.**
- What happens to Miranda at the end of the scene? **ماذا يحدث لميراندا في نهاية المشهد**
- **She feels very sleepy.** **تشعر بالنعاس الشديد.**
- Why does Prospero order Ariel to send Ferdinand to another part of the island?
لماذا أمر بروسبيرو آرييل بإرسال فرديناند إلى جزء آخر من الجزيرة
- **He wants Ferdinand's father, King Alonso, to think he's dead.** **يريد أن يعتقد والد فرديناند ، أنه مات.**
- What happened to the ship and its crew? **ماذا حدث للسفينة وطاقمها**
- **The ship is saved along with the crew who are put to sleep with a spell.** **تم إنقاذ السفينة مع الطاقم الذين تم جعلهم ينامون باستخدام التعويذة**
- Match:
- **Prospero** a man with magical powers who wants revenge. **بروسبيرو رجل ذو قوى سحرية يريد الانتقام.**
- **Miranda** Prospero's daughter, who is a princess but doesn't know. **ميراندا ابنة بروسبيرو ، وهي أميرة لكنها لا تعرف.**
- **Antonio** Prospero's brother, who betrayed him in the past. **أنطونيو شقيق بروسبيرو ، الذي خانه في الماضي.**
- **Alonso** a powerful king. **ألونسو ملك قوي.**
- **Ferdinand** the king's son. **فرديناند ابن الملك ألونسو.**
- **Caliban** Prospero's slave, who is treated badly by him. **كاليبان عبد بروسبيرو ، الذي يعامله بشكل سيء.**
- **Ariel** a spirit with great magical powers. **آرييل روح ذات قوى سحرية عظيمة.**
- Write the words below in old English. **اكتب الكلمات التالية حسب الانكليزية القديمة.**
- you = **thee , thou**
- are = **art**
- from where = **whence**
- has = **hath**
- It's = **'Tis**
- cannot = **canst**



القسم الثاني Section 2

1. Who is Sycorax? من هي سيكوراكس

a. Prospero's mother. والدة بروسبيرو

b. Miranda's mother. والدة ميراندا

c. Caliban's mother. والدة كاليبان

2. Why does Caliban think he owns the island? لماذا يعتقد كاليبان أنه يمتلك الجزيرة

a. Because he knows a lot about the island. لأنه يعرف الكثير عن الجزيرة

b. Because he was there first. لأنه كان هناك أولاً

c. Because Prospero promised to give it to him. لأن بروسبيرو وعده بإعطائها له

3. How was Prospero and Caliban's relationship at the beginning? كيف كانت علاقة بروسبيرو وكاليبان في البداية

a. friendly. ودية

b. violent. عنيفة

c. cold. باردة

4. What did Caliban teach Prospero? ماذا علم كاليبان بروسبيرو

a. where things were on the island. أين كانت الأشياء على الجزيرة

b. his own language. لغته الخاصة

c. how to make a spell. كيفية عمل تعويذة

5. What did Prospero teach Caliban? ماذا علم بروسبيرو كاليبان

a. about his mother Sycorax. عن والدته سيكوراكس

b. how to do magic. كيفية ممارسة السحر

c. to speak English. التحدث باللغة الإنجليزية

6. Where does Caliban live? أين يعيش كاليبان

a. in Prospero's hut. في كوخ بروسبيرو

b. in a cave. في كهف

c. in the forest. في الغابة



7. Caliban accuses Prospero of stealing his island. (**True** / False) يتهم كاليبان بروسبيرو بسرقة جزيرته
8. Caliban has always hated Prospero. (True / **False**) لطالما كره كاليبان بروسبيرو
9. Caliban regrets teaching Prospero about the island. (**True** / False) كاليبان نادم على تعليم بروسبيرو عن الجزيرة
10. Prospero keeps Caliban a prisoner in the cave. (**True** / False) بروسبيرو يحتجز كاليبان سجيناً في الكهف
11. Prospero thinks Caliban cannot do bad things. (True / **False**) يعتقد بروسبيرو أن كاليبان لا يستطيع فعل أشياء سيئة
12. Prospero compares Caliban to an animal. (**True** / False) بروسبيرو يقارن كاليبان بالحيوان
13. Prospero thinks Caliban does not deserve to be around good people. (**True** / False) يعتقد بروسبيرو أن كاليبان لا يستحق أن يكون بين الناس الطيبين
14. Caliban finds English useful. (True / **False**) يجد كاليبان اللغة الإنجليزية مفيدة
15. Write the words below in old English. اكتب الكلمات التالية حسب الانكليزية القديمة
- taken = **takest**
 - in it = **in't**
 - didn't = **didst not**
 - your = **thy**
 - were = **wast**
 - had = **hadst**
 - would = **wouldst**
16. Caliban accuses Prospero of taking his **island** after tricking him. Prospero was at first nice and taught Caliban English words like **sun** and **moon**. In exchange, Caliban showed Prospero where he could find **fresh water** and other things on the island. But now Prospero keeps him prisoner in a **cave**. Prospero replies by saying Caliban is only capable of **evil things**, despite what Prospero taught him. Caliban then says he only has enough English to **swear** and **curse**.

يتهم كاليبان بروسبيرو بالاستيلاء على **جزيرته** بعد خداعه. كان بروسبيرو لطيفاً في البداية وعلم كاليبان كلمات إنكليزية مثل **الشمس** و **القمر**. في المقابل ، أظهر كاليبان لبروسبيرو أين يمكنه العثور على **المياه العذبة** وأشياء أخرى على الجزيرة. لكن الآن يحتجزه بروسبيرو سجيناً في **كهف**. يرد بروسبيرو قائلاً إن كاليبان قادر فقط على فعل **الأشياء الشريرة** ، على الرغم مما علمه إياه بروسبيرو. ثم يقول كاليبان إنه يملك فقط من اللغة الإنكليزية الشيء الكافي **للحلف** و **الشتيم**.



Section 3 القسم الثالث

1. Ariel felt sorry for the nobles. (True / False) شعر آرييل بالأسف على النبلاء
2. Prospero is no longer angry with his brother and King Alonso. (True / False) لم يعد بروسبيرو غاضباً من أخيه والملك أลอนسو
3. Prospero decides to free them because he no longer wants revenge. (True / False) قرر بروسبيرو تحريرهم لأنه لم يعد يريد الانتقام
4. At the end, Prospero can no longer do magic. (True / False) في النهاية لم يعد بروسبيرو قادراً على ممارسة السحر
5. Prospero says he can only leave the island with the audience's permission. (True / False) يقول بروسبيرو إنه لا يستطيع مغادرة الجزيرة إلا بإذن الجمهور
6. Prospero asks King Alonso for his freedom. (True / False) يطلب بروسبيرو من الملك أลอนسو حريته
7. Prospero speaks directly to the audience at the end of the play. بروسبيرو يتحدث مباشرة إلى الجمهور في نهاية المسرحية
8. Ariel is given freedom by his master. آرييل تم منحه الحرية من قبل سيده
9. Antonio gives the dukedom back to his brother. أنطونيو يعيد الدوقية (السلطة) إلى أخيه
10. Alonso discovers that his son is alive. أลอนسو يكتشف أن ابنه على قيد الحياة
11. Ferdinand wants to marry Prospero's daughter. فرديناند يريد الزواج من ابنة بروسبيرو
12. Caliban might soon get his island back. كاليبان قد يستعيد جزيرته قريباً
13. Why does Prospero think he should feel more sorry for the nobles than Ariel? لماذا يعتقد بروسبيرو أنه يجب أن يشعر بالأسف على النبلاء أكثر من آرييل
- Because he is human like them and Ariel isn't. لأنه بشر مثلهم وآرييل ليس كذلك
14. Why does Prospero decide to forgive his brother and King Alonso? لماذا يقرر بروسبيرو مسامحة أخيه والملك أลอนسو
- Because he thinks it's more noble to act with honour than to look for revenge. لأنه يعتقد أنه من الأفضل التصرف بشرف بدلاً من البحث عن الانتقام
15. What does the audience need to do to set Prospero free? ماذا يجب أن يفعل الجمهور لتحرير بروسبيرو
- The audience needs to applaud the play. يحتاج الجمهور إلى التصفيق للمسرحية
16. What does Shakespeare, through Prospero, say sorry for? ما الذي يعتذر عنه شكسبير من خلال بروسبيرو
- He says sorry for the faults of the play. يعتذر عن أخطاء المسرحية



كيفية الاجابة عن القطعة الخارجية

1. يجب قراءة القطعة الخارجية مرتين الى ثلاث مرات وترجمة اكبر عدد ممكن من الكلمات حتى تتعرف اكثر عن القطعة الخارجية.

2. نحذف ادوات الاستفهام من الجملة ونقوم بتقديم **الفاعل** على **الفعل**.

3. ادوات السؤال هي:

(Who / What / When / Where / Which / Why / How many / How long / How)

4. اداة السؤال (Who) وتعني (من) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن شخص **عاقل**.

Ex: Who is Sarah?

- Sarah is والباقي من القطعة

5. اداة السؤال (What) وتعني (ماذا) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن شيء.

Ex: What does Ahmed suffer from?

- Ahmed suffers from والباقي من القطعة

6. اداة السؤال (When) وتعني (متى) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن **زمان** او **وقت**.

Ex: When did she leave home?

- She left home والباقي من القطعة

7. اداة السؤال (Where) وتعني (اين) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن **مكان**.

Ex: Where does Salma live?

- Salma lives in والباقي من القطعة

alieng93

8. اداة السؤال (Which) وتعني (اي) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن شيء **خاص** او **محدد**.

Ex: Which day of the week does Ali prefer?

- Ali prefers والباقي من القطعة

9. اداة السؤال (Why) وتعني (لماذا) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن **سبب**. وعادة نجد السبب بعد كلمة (because) او (to) المصدرية.

Ex: Why Layla is sad?

- Layla is sad because والباقي من القطعة

10. اداة السؤال (How many) وتعني (كم العدد) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن **عدد معين**.

Ex: How many brothers does Salim have?

- Salim has والباقي من القطعة

11. اداة السؤال (How long) وتعني (كم طول المدة) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن **مدة زمنية**.

Ex: How long did Mr. John stay in London?

- Mr. John stayed in London for والباقي من القطعة



12. اداة السؤال (How) وتعني (كيف) وهنا يجب ان نبحث عن طريقة معينة.

Ex: How did the thief escape?

- The thief escaped والباقي من القطعة

13. عند وجود (does) في السؤال يحذف ونضيف (s) الى الفعل الرئيسي.

Ex: What does Suha suffer from?

- Suha suffers from والباقي من القطعة

14. عند وجود (do) في السؤال يحذف ويبقى الفعل الرئيسي كما هو بدون اي تغيير.

Ex: Where do they go every Friday?

- They go والباقي من القطعة

15. عند وجود (did) في السؤال يحذف ونحول الفعل الرئيسي الى ماضي.

Ex: When did the match start?

- The match started والباقي من القطعة

16. اذا بدأ السؤال بأحد الافعال المساعدة:

(is/am/are/was/were/do/does/did/has/have/had/will/would/shall/should/can/could/may/might)
فيكون الجواب بـ (Yes / No) كما في المثال التالي:

Ex: Does Ahmed play football?

- Yes, he does.

- No, he doesn't.

17. قد يأتي سؤال (Give a suitable title to the passage) وتعني (اعطي عنوان مناسب للقطعة)
عند الاجابة نحذف كل ادوات السؤال ونبحث عن كلمة (صفة و اسم) تكرر كثيرا في القطعة فيكون هو الحل.

مع تمنياتي لكم بالنجاح والموفقية



اهم الافعال الغير قياسية في اللغة الانكليزية

No.	meaning المعنى	verb الفعل	past الماضي	p.p التصريف الثالث
1	يجلب	bring	brought	brought
2	يشترى	buy	bought	bought
3	يمسك	catch	caught	caught
4	يقاتل	fight	fought	fought
5	يعلم	teach	taught	taught
6	يعتقد	think	thought	thought
7	يبحث	seek	sought	sought
8	ينحني	bend	bent	bent
9	يبنى	build	built	built
10	يقرض	lend	lent	lent
11	يرسل	send	sent	sent
12	ينفق / يقضي	spend	spent	spent
13	يأتي	come	came	come
14	يصبح	become	became	become
15	يركض	run	ran	run
16	يهزم	beat	beat	beaten
17	يحصل	get	got	got / gotten
18	ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
19	يكلف	cost	cost	cost
20	يقطع	cut	cut	cut
21	يضرب	hit	hit	hit
22	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt	hurt
23	يدع	let	let	let
24	يضع	put	put	put
25	يقرأ	read	read	read
26	يغلق	shut	shut	shut
27	ينتشر	spread	spread	spread
28	يزحف / يتسلل	creep	crept	crept
29	يشعر	feel	felt	felt
30	يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
31	يركع	kneel	knelt	knelt



اهم الافعال الغير قياسية في اللغة الانكليزية

No.	meaning المعنى	verb الفعل	past الماضي	p.p التصريف الثالث
32	ينام	sleep	slept	slept
33	ينحب	weep	wept	wept
34	يكنس	sweep	swept	swept
35	يتناول / يتعامل	deal	dealt	dealt
36	يقصد	mean	meant	meant
37	يشم	smell	smelt	smelt
38	يجد	find	found	found
39	يُطعم	feed	fed	fed
40	يسمع	hear	heard	heard
41	يمسك	hold	held	held
42	يغادر	leave	left	left
43	يخسر	lose	lost	lost
44	يلتقي	meet	met	met
45	يرمي	shoot	shot	shot
46	يجلس	sit	sat	sat
47	يقف	stand	stood	stood
48	يفهم	understand	understood	understood
49	يفوز	win	won	won
50	يضع	lay	laid	laid
51	يدفع	pay	paid	paid
52	يقول	say	said	said
53	يصنع	make	made	made
54	يبيع	sell	sold	sold
55	يخبر	tell	told	told
56	يملك	have	had	had
57	يبدأ	begin	began	begun
58	يشرب	drink	drank	drunk
59	يرن / يدق	ring	rang	rung
60	يعني	sing	sang	sung
61	يغطس	sink	sank	sunk
62	يسبح	swim	swam	swum



اهم الافعال الغير قياسية في اللغة الانكليزية

No.	meaning المعنى	verb الفعل	past الماضي	p.p. التصريف الثالث
63	يتحمل	bear	bore	borne
64	يكسر	break	broke	broken
65	يختار	choose	chose	chosen
66	يركب	ride	rode	ridden
67	يسوق	drive	drove	driven
68	تشرق	rise	rose	risen
69	يتكلم	speak	spoke	spoken
70	يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
71	يُقسم	swear	swore	sworn
72	يمزق	tear	tore	torn
73	يلبس	wear	wore	worn
74	يكتب	write	wrote	written
75	يهز	shake	shook	shaken
76	ياخذ	take	took	taken
77	يسقط	fall	fell	fallen
78	يعطي	give	gave	given
79	يسامح	forgive	forgave	forgiven
80	يأكل	eat	ate	eaten
81	ينفخ / يهب	blow	blew	blown
82	يكبر / ينمو	grow	grew	grown
83	يعلم	know	knew	known
84	يرمي	throw	threw	thrown
85	يطير	fly	flew	flown
86	يفعل	do	did	done
87	يذهب	go	went	gone
88	يرى	see	saw	seen
89	يعض	bite	bit	bitten
90	يختبئ	hide	hid	hidden
91	يحرق	burn	burnt	burnt
92	يستيقظ	wake	woke	woken
93	يسكب	spill	spilt	spilt





English For Iraq

5TH PREPARATORY

2026

Grammar

Vocabulary

Textbook Passages

Prepared by : Ali Yahya



للتواصل

يمكنكم الانضمام لقناتي

على التلكرام : علي يحيى مدرس انكليزي